

# **Access Engine (ACE)**



en

Configuration Manual

# Table of contents

1	Introduction	6
1.1	Synchronization	6
2	System overview	9
3	Administration rights for operators and workstations	11
3.1	Introduction to authorizations and profiles	11
3.2	Creating Workstations	11
3.3	Workstation Profiles	12
3.4	Workstation rights	13
3.5	Authorizations	14
3.6	User Profiles	15
3.7	Operators	16
3.7.1	General operator settings	16
3.7.2	ACE operator settings	16
3.7.3	ACE API Access rights	16
3.7.4	Additional check via external system	16
3.8	2-Factor Authentication	19
3.9	Setting up a Workstation	22
3.10	Starting the Workstation	23
3.11	Starting the Access Engine Dialog Manager	24
3.12	ACE Debug Logfiles	25
4	Creating and Administrating Areas	27
4.1	Divisions	27
4.1.1	Assigning Divisions within the Tree structure	27
4.1.2	Assigning Divisions in Detector placement	28
4.2	Access control Areas	28
4.2.1	Limiting populations in access areas	31
5	Connection Server AccessEngine	32
5.1	Device Editor basics	32
5.2	Configuration mode and overrides	34
5.3	MACs and RMACs in flat topologies	34
5.3.1	Configuring a MAC on the DMS server without RMAC	35
5.3.2	Preparing MAC server computers to run MACs and RMACs	36
5.3.3	Configuring a MAC on its own MAC server	36
5.3.4	Adding RMACs to MACs	38
5.3.5	Adding further MAC/RMAC pairs	40
5.3.6	Using the MACInstaller tool	41
5.3.7	New MAC commands in BIS	43
5.4	Creating and configuring local access controllers	43
5.4.1	AMC parameters and settings	44
5.5	Creating and configuring entrances	62
5.5.1	Entrances - background	62
5.5.2	Creating Entrances	63
5.5.3	Additional I/O checks	68
5.5.4	Terminals	69
5.5.5	Predefined Entrance Model Signals	74
5.5.6	Special door models	81
5.5.7	Doors	92
5.5.8	Readers	95

5.5.9	Access by PIN alone	108
5.5.10	Extension board - AMCEXT	109
5.6	Additional Information	113
5.6.1	Optional additional readers	113
5.6.2	Flow charts of procedures in Access Control	115
5.6.3	Configuring Random screening	120
5.7	Assigning detector types	122
5.8	Hierarchical cardholder management	123
5.8.1	Launching the ACE Hierarchy Tool	126
5.8.2	Registering the top-level server	126
5.8.3	Registering a mid-level server	127
5.8.4	Registering a bottom-level server	128
5.8.5	Deleting a server from the hierarchy	129
5.8.6	Modifying a server in the hierarchy	130
5.8.7	Starting and stopping replicators in BIS	130
5.8.8	Replication in detail	132
5.8.9	Limitations of the current version	132
5.9	MACs and RMACs in hierarchical topologies	133
5.10	Custom reader configurations	135
5.10.1	Introduction	136
5.10.2	The reader property: Extended reader parameters	136
5.10.3	Importing a reader parameter set	136
5.10.4	Applying a parameter set to readers	137
5.10.5	Managing reader parameter sets	138
E 10 C	Delating reader parameter sets	120
5.10.0		139
6	Infrastructure - System Configuration	139
6.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition	<b>139</b> <b>140</b> 140
6.1.10.0 6.1.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types	139 140 140 140
6.1 6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying	139 140 140 140 140
6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions	139 140 140 140 140 142
6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager	139 140 140 140 140 142 142
6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings	139 140 140 140 140 142 142 142
6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 6.3	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers	139 140 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145
6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 6.3 6.3.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader	139 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145 146
6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 6.3 6.3.1 6.3.2	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface	139 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145 146 147
6 6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 6.3 6.3.1 6.3.2 6.3.3 6.3.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface	139 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145 146 147 148
6 6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 6.3 6.3.1 6.3.2 6.3.3 6.3.4 6.3.4 6.3.5	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148
5.10.8         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only	139 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148
5.10.8         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148
6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader Configuring PIN Codes	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 149 150
6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader Configuring PIN Codes Fingerprint readers	139 140 140 140 142 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152
5.10.8         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader Configuring PIN Codes Fingerprint readers Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152
5.10.8         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7	Infrastructure - System Configuration         Card Definition         Active Card Types         Creating and Modifying         Activating / Deactivating card definitions         Creating card data in the dialog manager         Configuring card codings         Enrollment readers         Configuring a serial enrollment reader         DELTA Readers with USB interface         RF IDeas Readers with USB interface         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only         ACE operator login via enrollment reader         Configuring PIN Codes         Fingerprint readers         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152 152
6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7         6.7	Infrastructure - System Configuration         Card Definition         Active Card Types         Creating and Modifying         Activating / Deactivating card definitions         Creating card data in the dialog manager         Configuring card codings         Enrollment readers         Configuring a serial enrollment reader         DELTA Readers with USB interface         RF IDeas Readers with USB interface         Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only         ACE operator login via enrollment reader         Configuring PIN Codes         Fingerprint readers         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Onfiguring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Office mode         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152 152 154
5.10.8         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7         6.7.1	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader Configuring PIN Codes Fingerprint readers Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control Palm vein readers Office mode Configuring an entrance for office mode	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152 152 154 155
5.10.0         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7         6.7.2         6.8	Infrastructure - System Configuration         Card Definition         Active Card Types         Creating and Modifying         Activating / Deactivating card definitions         Creating card data in the dialog manager         Configuring card codings         Enrollment readers         Configuring a serial enrollment reader         DELTA Readers with USB interface         RF IDeas Readers with USB interface         Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only         ACE operator login via enrollment reader         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Office mode         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Office mode         Configuring an entrance for office mode         Authorizing and instructing cardholders to set office mode	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152 152 155 155
6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7         6.7.1         6.7.2         6.8         6.8	Infrastructure - System Configuration Card Definition Active Card Types Creating and Modifying Activating / Deactivating card definitions Creating card data in the dialog manager Configuring card codings Enrollment readers Configuring a serial enrollment reader DELTA Readers with USB interface RF IDeas Readers with USB interface Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only ACE operator login via enrollment reader Configuring PIN Codes Fingerprint readers Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control Palm vein readers Office mode Configuring an entrance for office mode Authorizing and instructing cardholders to set office mode Custom Fields for personnel data Proviewing and editing Custom fields	139 140 140 140 142 142 143 145 146 147 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 148 149 150 152 152 152 152 154 155 156 156
5.10.0         6         6.1         6.1.1         6.1.2         6.1.3         6.1.4         6.2         6.3         6.3.1         6.3.2         6.3.3         6.3.4         6.3.5         6.3.6         6.4         6.5         6.5.1         6.6         6.7         6.7.1         6.7.2         6.8         6.8.1         6.8.2	Detering reader parameter sets         Infrastructure - System Configuration         Card Definition         Active Card Types         Creating and Modifying         Activating / Deactivating card definitions         Creating card data in the dialog manager         Configuring card codings         Enrollment readers         Configuring a serial enrollment reader         DELTA Readers with USB interface         RF IDeas Readers with USB interface         Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment         Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only         ACE operator login via enrollment reader         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control         Palm vein readers         Office mode         Configuring an entrance for office mode         Authorizing and instructing cardholders to set office mode         Custom Fields for personnel data         Previewing and editing Custom fields         Pulse for data fielde	139         140         140         140         140         140         142         142         143         144         145         146         147         148         149         150         152         155         155         156         156         156         156         156

6.9	Audit Trail	159
7	Configuring Threat Level Management	160
7.1	Concepts of Threat Level Management	160
7.2	Overview of the configuration process	160
7.3	Configuration steps in the device editor	161
7.3.1	Creating a threat level	161
7.3.2	Creating a Door security profile	161
7.3.3	Creating a Reader security profile	162
7.3.4	Assigning door and reader security profiles to entrances	163
7.3.5	Assigning a threat level to a hardware signal	164
7.4	Configuration steps in System data dialogs	164
7.4.1	Creating a Person security profile	165
7.4.2	Assigning a Person security profile to a Person Type	165
7.5	Configuration steps in Personnel data dialogs	166
8	Integrating Otis Compass	167
8.1	Configuring a Compass system in the Device Editor	168
8.2	Configuring customized fields for Otis-specific properties of cardholders	172
8.3	Creating and configuring authorizations for Otis elevators	173
9	Integrating a Kemas key cabinet	175
9.1	Configuring Kemas within the access control system	175
10	Integrating a Deister key cabinet	177
10.1	Configuring a new Deister system in ACE	178
10.2	How to read the terminal display	179
10.3	Modifying an existing Deister system in ACE	180
11	Distributed systems	182
11.1	ACE distributed Installation	182
11.1.1	SQL Server for BIS database connections	185
11.1.2	SQL Server for BIS Reporting Services connections	186
11.2	IPsec for a distributed system	186
12	Optimization of large installations	195
12.1	Considerations for capacity planning	197
13	Achieving EN 60839	201
14	Configuring SmartIntego locking systems	203
15	Configuring intrusion areas and panels	207
15.1	Connecting the access control system to the intrusion panels	207
15.1.1	Step 1: Connecting to the RPS API	208
15.1.2	Step 2: Configuring the panel connections	208
15.2	Creating authorization profiles for panels	209
15.3	Assigning panel authorization profiles to cardholders	210
	Glossary	211

# 1 Introduction

# **1.1** Synchronization

Upon first use, but also when restarting the Configuration Browser, a dialog box may appear inviting you to synchronize the BIS platform with Access Engine.

🙇 Initializ	zation of "AccessEngine" (Access Engine)	×
	Synchronization between Platform and "AccessEngine" (Access Engine):	
(i)	Your currently running Access Engine configuration differs from the configuration you are about to load.	~
	* You are upgrading an old version. *	
	If the local computer which you are working on now is the target computer for this configuration with Access Engine, please synchronize now. Cancel the synchronization if you are using this computer to prepare a configuration for a different BIS-system and you must not affect the local system. Otherwise the configuration of the local Access Engine of this computer will be overwritten immediately and irreversible!	
	More Info     Synchronize     Cancel	
This dialog	can contain various reasons for its being shown:	

- You are trying to update a configuration
- You are trying to load a configuration from a different system

-	
I	

### Notice!

If you have stored several configurations please check the settings on the BIS Manager tabs **System start / stop** and **Load/Save Configuration** before synchronizing, to make sure you are loading the correct configuration.

The button More Info will reveal an additional window giving more detailed information.

🙇 Initializ	zation of "AccessEngine" (Access Engine)	×
	Synchronization between Platform and "AccessEngine" (Access Engine):	
Ų	Your currently running Access Engine configuration differs from the configuration you are about to load.	^
	* You are upgrading an old version. *	
	If the local computer which you are working on now is the target computer for this configuration with Access Engine, please synchronize now. Cancel the synchronization if you are using this computer to prepare a configuration for a different BIS-system and you must not affect the local system.	
	Otherwise the configuration of the local Access Engine of this computer will be overwritten immediately and irreversible!	
		~
	Synchronization information:	
	Operators: 0 deleted, 0 modified, 1 added.	<u>^</u>
	Added operators: 'BIS'	
	Do you still want to continue?	~
	More Info     Synchronize     Cancel	

Click **Synchronize** to confirm that you wish to continue. A progress bar is shown briefly during the synchronization.

Click **OK** to confirm the successful completion of the synchronization process.



### **Manual Synchronization**

You can force a synchronization manually, e.g. if you find that certain devices are not being shown in the platform. Right click on the connection server **Access Engine** in the Configuration Browser and select **Synchronize** at any time to realign the data.



This mode of access also lists any discrepancies, so that the synchronization process can be cancelled if no significant changes are missing.

Thus unnecessary actions can be avoided. If the BIS platform and Access Engine both have the same data-status then no synchronization is necessary, and this will be reported by a pop-up window.

This feature can be used for troubleshooting. If problems occur in the display, accessibility or functionality of access-control installations, then the synchronization function can be invoked to check the data-status. If the pop-up window below appears, then a data-mismatch between platform and access engine can be ruled out as the cause.

Synchronization between Platform and AccessEngine 🛛 🗙			
No synchronization steps needed!			
	OK		

# 2 System overview

The Access Engine (ACE) software, in conjunction with Bosch access hardware, is a complete access control system within the Building Integration System (BIS). It encompasses all the essential features of any standalone access control system, plus a wide range of optional enhancements.

Like the other BIS engines, the ACE takes full advantage of all the extra BIS features, such as interactive location maps and action plans for powerful, fully integrated alarm management. Alarm messages and access control events can be displayed with graphical location information and workflow instructions.

ACE uses the standard BIS user interfaces and their flexibility of customization. Additionally ACE offers specific access configuration interfaces for cardholders, access hardware and access rules.

The main benefit of the Building Integration System family is the integration of a wide variety of security and safety systems on the same premises. By combining ACE with other BIS engines (e.g. Automation and Video) you can design smart security solutions tailored exactly to the requirements of your tender.

The Access Engine runs on a single-workstation, in a client-server system, or within a distributed environment with a central server and local or regional servers.

In the distributed multi-server environment all devices, cardholders and authorizations can be managed from the top-level server.

To ensure highest data security and integrity, BIS ACE can manage high-security RS485 controllers with OSDP v2 protocol for authenticated encrypted communication and reader supervision.



### Pos. Description (single-server system)

- 1 Central BIS server with Access Engine and Video Engine SW
- 2 Multiple workstations for alarm management or enrollment
- 3 Enrollment devices such as card printer, signature scanner, enrollment reader, camera for ID photos

Access controllers
Access readers
Door strikes
IP camera
Digital Video Recorder e.g. DIVAR for alarm recording

3

### Administration rights for operators and workstations 3.1 Introduction to authorizations and profiles

Administration rights for the access control system determine which system dialogs may be opened, and which functions may be performed there.

Rights can be assigned to both operators and workstations.

The rights of a workstation may temporarily restrict the rights of its operator, because security-critical operations should only be performed from workstations that are especially secure.

Rights are assigned to operators and workstations in bundles called **Profiles.** Each profile is tailored to the duties of one of a particular type of operator or workstation. Each operator or workstation may have multiple authorization profiles.

### **Overall procedure**

To configure the workstations and operators of an access control system the normal order of tasks is:

- 1. Create the workstations in the dialog:
  - BIS Configuration browser > Administration > ACE Workstations
- 2. Create workstation profiles in the dialog: BIS Configuration browser > Administration > ACE Workstation profiles
- 3. Assign profiles to workstations in the dialog:
- BIS Configuration browser > Administration > ACE Workstation rights
- 4. Create operator profiles in the dialog:
  - BIS Configuration browser > Administration > Authorizations (for access-control functions of the BIS user interface)
  - BIS Configuration browser > Administration > ACE User profiles (for functions of the ACE user interface)
- Assign profiles to operators in the dialog: 5.

### BIS Configuration browser > Administration > Operators

#### 3.2 **Creating Workstations**

### Introduction

Workstations are the computers from which operators operate the access control system. First a workstation must be "created", that is, the computer is registered within the access control system.

Depending on its physical location, an access control workstation should be carefully configured regarding its usage, for example:

- Which operators may use it
- What credentials are necessary to use it
- What access control tasks may be performed from it

### **Creating workstations**

### **Dialog path**

BIS configuration browser > Administration > ACE Workstations

- 1. Right-click **DMS** and select **New object** from the context menu, or click **†** on the toolbar.
- 2. Enter values for the parameters:
  - The **Name** of the workstation must match the computer name exactly

- **Description** is optional. It can be used, for example, to describe the function and the location of the workstation
- Login via reader Leave this check box clear unless operators are to log on to this workstation by presenting cards to an enrollment reader connected to this workstation. For details see the section 2-Factor Authentication, page 19
- **Automatic logout after:** The number of seconds after a logon via enrollment reader is automatically terminated. Leave at 0 for unlimited time.

### Refer to

2-Factor Authentication, page 19

# **3.3 Workstation Profiles**

A workstation profile is a collection of rights that defines the following:

- The menus of the dialog manager and the dialogs which can be used at a workstation
- Which user profile(s) an operator must have to in order to log in at this workstation.



### Notice!

Workstation profiles override user profiles

An operator can employ only those of his user profile rights which are also included in the workstation profile of the computer where he is logged on. If the workstation and operator profiles have no rights in common, the user will lack all rights at that workstation.

🙇 B	BIS Configuration Browser									
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit E <u>x</u> tras <u>H</u> elp									
-	License		< □ > >   ×							^
B	Server structure									
	Information	Profile name:	WP-Server Description: Au	thorization	s at server					
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	A d 1 C									
CDD	Authorizations	Functions		View						
<b>3</b>	Operators	Personnel Da	ta	Yes	-					
æ	ACE User Profiles	Persons		Yes						
9	ACE Workstation Profiles	Companies		Yes						
Q	ACE Work station Bights	Print Badge	3\$	Yes						
(C)	ACE Workstation highls	PIN- Code		Yes						
28	ALE Workstations	Blocking		Yes						-
		Blacklist		Yes						-
		Areas Change di	ision	Yes	~					
		j Change un	ision	165						
		User pronie			A					
R	Administration	Assigned profi	es.		evaliable profile	s:				
46		Name	Description		Name	Description				
1	Locations	Conrig Dialog	S ALE dialogs and applications of the Configuration on the Configuration on the Configuration of the Configurat		Lodge Personnel Dist:	Visitor, Guardtour- and Path-dialogs				
	Locacions	- Cyston Data	only dialogs to manage models and damon		UP-Administrat	or All available dialogs of the system				
0-1	Connetions			<1						
48	connections									
En.		1		2						
	Infrastructure									
e.										
EE	General Settings									
-										
Ð	Logging / Protocol	<	>							
2										~
R	Tools	<								>
00								6-1-1	(44 D)	
	».						~	Apply	Visca	nu l
🉈 Bl	S	Ready	E:\MgtS\Customer_Configuration\ACE							_

### Dialog path

Configuration browser > Administration > ACE Workstation Profiles

### **Creating workstation profiles**

- 1. Click  $\square \oplus$  to create a new profile
- 2. Enter a profile name in the **Profile Name** field (mandatory)
- 3. Enter a profile description in the **Description** field (optional but recommended)

Р

- 4. Click or **Apply** to save your changes
- 5. Add functions and user profiles as described below.

### Assigning execution rights for system functions

- 1. In the **Functions** list, select the functions that are to be accessible to this workstation and double-click them to set the value in the **Execute** column to *Yes*.
  - Likewise ensure that all the functions that are not to be accessible are set to No.
- 2. Click or **Apply** to save your changes

### Assigning User profiles to Workstation profiles

In the User Profile pane.

The **Assigned Profiles** list contains all user profiles authorized to log onto a workstation with this workstation profile.

The **Available Profiles** field contains all other profiles. These are not yet authorized to log onto a workstation with this workstation profile.

1. Click the arrow buttons between the lists to transfer selected profiles from one list to the other.

2. Click or **Apply** to save your changes

### Notice!

The default administrator profiles for the user (**UP-Administrator**) and the workstation (**WP-Administrator**) cannot be changed or deleted.

The profile **WP-Administrator** is irrevocably bound to the server workstation. This guarantees that there is at least one user who can log onto the server workstation.

# **3.4 Workstation rights**

Use this dialog to manage the assignments of Workstation profiles to Workstations. Every workstation must have at least one workstation profile. If it has multiple profiles then all rights in those profiles apply simultaneously.

### **Dialog path**

### **Configuration > Operators and workstations > Workstation rights** BIS configuration browser > **Administration > ACE Workstation rights**

### Assigning Workstation profiles to workstations

The **Assigned Profiles** list contains all the workstation profiles that already belong to this workstation.

The **Available Profiles** list contains all workstation profiles that have not yet been assigned to this workstation.

- 1. In the list of workstations, select the workstation you wish to configure
- 2. Click the arrow buttons between the **Assígned** and **Available** lists to transfer selected profiles from one to the other.

З

Click or **Apply** to save your changes

# i

### Notice!

The default administrator profiles for the user (**UP-Administrator**) and the workstation (**WP-Administrator**) cannot be changed or deleted.

The profile **WP-Administrator** is irrevocably bound to the server workstation. This guarantees that there is at least one user who can log onto the server workstation.

# 3.5 Authorizations

### Introduction

Use the **Authorizations** dialog to create bundles of user rights for operators of the BIS system: BIS Configuration browser > **Administration** > **Authorizations** Access Engine operators have separate dialogs: BIS Configuration browser > **Administration** > **ACE** <dialog name>

### Procedure

- To create a new authorization, click the button New in the Authorizations list field and overwrite the default name. To rename or delete authorizations from this list click Rename or Delete.
- 2. If the **Divisions** feature is licensed and in use, use the **Authorized for divisions** pane to restrict the authorizations to one or more of the divisions that you have previously defined.
- 3. Use the check boxes to add, modify and delete rights to access the various controls, address lists and state lists of the system.
- 4. Click **Apply** to save changes.

### **Configuration authorizations**

- To create named bundles of rights only for the dialogs of the configuration browser, click Modify... in the Authorization for configuration pane. The Configuration authorizations popup behaves like a miniature of the main Authorizations dialog.
- 2. Click **New** to create new configuration authorizations, and overwrite the default name.
- 3. Select the desired authorizations from the list, and click **OK** to save.

Click **Edit** or **Delete**. To edit or delete existing entries.

Rights can be assigned for all configuration browser dialogs, or for a subset.



# 3.6 User Profiles

### Introduction to user profiles

Note: The term User is synonymous with Operator in the context of User rights.

A user profile is a collection of rights that defines the following:

- The menus of the dialog manager and the dialogs which are visible to the operator.
- The capabilities of the operator in those dialogs, basically the rights to execute, change, add and delete the elements of those dialogs.

User profiles should be carefully configured, depending on the person's experience, security clearance and responsibilities:

### Dialog path

BIS configuration browser > Administration > ACE User profiles

### **Creating a User profile**

- 1. Click  $\Phi$  to create a new profile
- 2. Enter a profile name in the **Profile Name** field (mandatory)
- 3. Enter a profile description in the **Description** field (optional but recommended)
- 4. Click or **Apply** to save your changes



### Notice!

Choose profile names that clearly and accurately describe the profile's capabilities and limitations.

### Adding editing and execution rights for system functions

- 1. In the list pane, select the functions (first column) and the capabilities within that function (**Execute**, **Change**, **Add**, **Delete**) that are to be accessible to this profile. Doubleclick them to toggle their settings to *Yes*.
  - Likewise ensure that all the functions that are not to be accessible are set to NO.

2. Click or **Apply** to save your changes

# 3.7 Operators

Use the Operators dialog to assign bundles of user rights, "authorizations", to operators of the BIS and ACE systems.



### Notice!

**IMPORTANT:** Change the default passwords for the system users **Administrator** and **BIS**, as soon as possible, because these users have unlimited authorizations.

### 3.7.1 General operator settings

For use of the General operator settings tab, see BIS configuration help.

### 3.7.2 ACE operator settings

Special authorizations govern the use of ACE dialogs and applications. These authorizations are defined in so-called ACE User Profiles and then assigned to individual users. When a new user is created he automatically receives the default profile **UP-Administrator**, which gives unlimited edit and execute rights for Access Engine dialogs and applications. Use this dialog to restrict the rights of an operator, as required.

Use the arrow buttons  $\leq$  and  $\geq$  to move profiles out of the **Assigned profiles** list box, and replace them with profiles from the **Available profiles** list box.

### **Check box: Global administrator**

Certain data can be specially protected using the setting **Administered globally**, which appears next to the ID photo on the Persons dialog. Only operators that have the **Global administrator** right can edit these data. All other operators have read-only rights for these data.

Select the check box **Global administrator** to assign this special right to the operator.

### **3.7.3 ACE API Access rights**

Use the tab **ACE API Access rights** to define the rights of an operator regarding the Access Engine Application Programming interface (API).

The choices are:

- No access (default)
- Read-only access
- Unlimited access

### 3.7.4 Additional check via external system

This feature provides an additional I/O check via an external system.

Examples of additional checks for a cardholder who has already authorized himself with valid credentials:

- Video verification is required that the credential is being presented by its true owner.
- Video verification of a cardholder's vehicle registration.
- Video or weight verification to prevent tailgating .
- Checks for radio-active and other kinds of contamination.

### AMC LEVEL:

### Output Signals

No.	Name	Description
13	externalAcActivate	Activate external access control system

### Input Signals

No.	Name	Description
3	externalAcAllow	Allows access if set to '1' (mandatory).
4	externalAcDenial	Denies access if set to '1' (optional)

### **Control logic steps**

The following additional control logic steps are added:

- Set the <activate external access control system> output to signal the external system, so that a decision is expected.
- Await a number <n>ms. The value <n> is a configurable timeout (by 1/10 sec steps, minimum = 10/10 sec.). A value of 0 means: no external check.
- Evaluate the <external access decision accepted> input or the <external access decision denied> input while waiting.
- If one of these inputs is set, the access will be granted or declined, and no more waiting is necessary. Otherwise at the end of the waiting time the AMC will decline.
- In case of a denial an 'access denied by external system' event message is generated.
- Reset the <activate external access control system> output
  - after a signal (accept or deny) has detected.
  - if no signal (accept or deny) arrives, then at the end of the waiting time.

The procedure is according to the time chart below:



The input signal is required to rest the requested time of m=1 second (m is configurable in 1/10 sec steps, minimum = 10/10 sec.).

### **Event Messages**

No.	Name	Description
1050	MLD_EXTERNAL_AC_DENY	Access denied by external system.
1051	MLD_EXTERNAL_AC_TIMEOUT	External system timeout.

### **Entrance Parameters (pE)**

Name	Туре	Description
EXTACDELAY	TIME_T / Decimal	The duration (in 100ms units) the access controller will wait after setting the externalAcActivate signal for the externalAcAllow signal.
EXTACPULS	TIME_T / Decimal	The duration (in 100ms units) the externalAcAllow signal has to be active. Default: 10/10 = 1000 ms (minimum = 500 ms). Ii is not necessary to edit this parameter in the Config.browser

### MAC LEVEL:

On the MAC level the new parameters EXTACDELAY and EXTACPULS for the entrance are forwarded to the AMC.

### DMS LEVEL:

On the DMS level the additional check is configured for door models in the configuration browser.

Two additional parameters for the door model are available:

#### **EXTACDELAY: External Access Delay**

This is the time to wait for an answer of the external system in 100 ms units, (e.g. 30 means 3 seconds) Dialog text: '**Waiting time external access decision**' .The default value is 0, i.e. no additional external check.

If this parameter is set >0, check results are expected from the external system, otherwise no access will be granted. If this parameter is set >0, then it must not be less than 10/10 (1s)

#### **EXTACPULS: Duration of external signals**

The duration the external signals are active. Note: The parameter EXTACPULS is set to its default value. It is not available in the configuration browser.

If this additional check is configured and the card/tag is authorized, and an accepted signal from the external system is set, the AMC will open.

If a denial signal is set the AMC will send a message '**access denied by external system**' to the DMS.

If no signal is set the AMC will send a message '**external system timeout**' to the DMS. The messages are sent to the corresponding reader device and are forwarded to the access

control system. They can be used there to create alarm messages.

The additional check by I/O also works if DMS and the overall access control system are offline.

Access authorization check:

- AMC checks if the MAC is offline, and
  - permits the access if this complies with the rules, or,
  - if access is denied, the process is terminated and a message sent.
- AMC checks via I/O, if these are configured and not yet rejected
  - if access is denied, the process is terminated an a message sent.
- AMC requests the additional video check via MAC and DMS, if these requests are configured and not yet rejected
- If access is denied, the process is terminated and a message sent.

# **3.8 2-Factor Authentication**

The **2-Factor Authentication** is a feature that enables a double identification of user. With this feature the user has to identify himself by entering an ID-number **and** presenting a card to a reader. Configuring the **2-Factor Authentication** means to configure a workstation with a dialog reader.

On the BIS Server, start the BIS Configuration Browser and click the tab System Start/Stop > Start (Configuration Browser).

Go to **Administration > ACE Workstation** and create a workstation if necessary and activate **Login by Reader**.

BIS Configuration Browser				
<u>File E</u> dit E <u>x</u> tras <u>H</u> elp				
🙎 License	🗸 Apply 🛛 🗙 D	liscard		
Server structure				
Information	<u> + ч; ≈ ×</u>			
Authorizations	DMS	Workstation		
M Operators	AC3-AP-MS			
ACE Licenses	AC3-AP-TW02	Name:	AC3×0013BT1	
ACE User profiles	AC3X0013B11	Description:	AC3×0013BT1	
ACE Workstation profiles				
ACE Workstation rights			<b>_</b>	
ACE Workstations		Login by reader:	<b>v</b>	
		Automatic Logout after:	0 Seconds	
A				
Cocations				

Check, if a dialog reader is configured for the required workstation: **BIS Configuration Browser > Infrastructure > ACE Card reader.** 

For the feature to work, the operator must also be recorded as a cardholder in the access control system.

Select **BIS Configuration Browser -> Administrator -> Operators**, and select an operator.

- Select the tab **ACE Operator Settings**
- Enter a name in the search field and click **Search person**.
- Select a person from the result list and click **Assign person**.

				29	
BIS Configuration Browser					
License	🗸 Apply 🗶 Discard				
Server structure					
Information	+ -/ ×	General operator settings ACE ope	rator settings ACE API Access right	its	
Authorizations	Administrator				
🔐 Operators	BIS	Assign profiles			
ACE Licenses		Assigned profiles	Available p	rofiles	
ACE User profiles	ACE_API	Name Description	Name D	escription	
ACE Workstation profiles	👗 Adams_Gabriel			Teson and visitors only	
ACE Workstation rights			$\geq$		
ACE Workstations					
		Global Administrator 🗖			
		Assign person			
		Last name:		Search pers	on l
		Einsteinen L			
		First name.			
		Last name	First name	Date of birth	
		Abbott	Elizabeth		
		Adams	Gabriel		
		Adams	Kian		
		Adams	Sarah		
Administration		Adams	Thomas		
N∰.		Ahmed	Edward		
Cocations		Ahmed	George		
		Ahmed	Kavden		
			1- C		

On the BIS Client proceed as follows:

- Start the BIS as usual.
- Log in with the operator name as described above and start the Access Engine. As a result you will get a message that asks you to present a card to the reader.

<u>File E</u> dit E <u>x</u> tras <u>H</u> elp	
1 Detector types	✓ Apply 🗶 Discard
States	
CE PIN codes	Workstations Card reader
ACE Card coding configu	+ X Turner DecarSon HIT AC SN HISP
ACE Card reader	AC3AP-MS
ACE Card definition	Pepagwa HITAG SN USB Card usage default:  Personal card  Card used for pers -
ACE Custom fields	
	UN-WIN2008EN-MS
	Serial number inverted:
	Baud rate: 9600
	Data bits: 8
	Parity: N
	Stop bits: 1
	Timeout: 100
	Heset to default
Administration	
Locations	

# í

### Notice!

In this case only one reader is listed, see "PegaSys Hitag SN USB" in the example above. If there are more than one readers listed, the **Login Reader** must always be the first reader in the list.

# 3.9 Setting up a Workstation

The client runs in a browser. The following describes the configuration in Internet Explorer.In Internet Explorer navigate to Settings > Options

	occurry	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Home	e page You ca Add <u>r</u> es	n change :s: htt	which pag :p:// <nam< td=""><td>je to use for yo e of the login s</td><td>ur home pag erver&gt;/</td><td>je.</td></nam<>	je to use for yo e of the login s	ur home pag erver>/	je.
		Use <u>C</u>	urrent	Use <u>D</u> efault	Use B	lank
		Delete Co	okjes)	Delete <u>F</u> iles	<u>S</u> ettin	gs
Histor	y TheHi quick a	story folde Iccess to I	r contains ecently vie	links to pages ; ewed pages.	vou've visite	d, for
	Days to	) <u>k</u> eep paj	ges in histo	ory: 20 😂	Clear <u>H</u>	listory
	lors	For	ıts	Languages	. Acc <u>e</u>	ssibility

- 2. Enter the name of the BIS login server as the home page.
- 3. Select the **Security** tab.

nermet	Propert	195				
General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connection	s Programs	Advanced
Select	a Web con	tent <u>z</u> one	to specify	its security se	ettings.	
6	2		(	1		
Int	ernet l	.ocal intra	net Trus	ted sites	Restricted sites	
	Trusted :	sites				
V	This zone trust not to data.	contains \ damage ;	Veb sites I your comp	that you uter or	<u><u>S</u>i</u>	ies
Secu	rity level fo	this zone				
	Custo	m				
	Cust - To - To	om setting change th use the re	is. ne settings commend	, click Custon ed settings, c	n Level. lick Default Li	evel.
		C	<u>C</u> ustom I	Level	<u>D</u> efault L	evel
			ОК		Cancel	Apply

2021-05 | 4.9.0.1 | CM



- 5. Clear the check box Require server verification (https:) for all sites in this zone.
- 6. Make the following two entries via the upper input field:
- http://<name of the login server >
- http**s**://<name of the login server >

Click **Add** after each entry to enter them into the list field below, then click **OK** to verify the changes.

1. Now click **Custom Level...** on the **Security** tab.

Security Settings	? 🗙
Settings:	
ActiveX controls and plug-ins  Automatic prompting for ActiveX controls  Disable  Enable  Administrator approved Disable Enable  Download signed ActiveX controls Disable Enable Disable Disab	
	>
Reset custom settings Reset to: Low Rese	*
OK Ca	ncel

- 2. Activate all ActiveX elements and click **OK**.
- 3. Click **OK** to confirm the settings.
- 4. Restart Internet Explorer to open the new home page.

## **3.10** Starting the Workstation

When starting the workstation for the first time, there might be a delay while some software is downloaded from the BIS server to the client workstation. After the delay, the BIS system login is shown.



Login using the name and password of an authorized user. The BIS menu is shown.

BOSCH Building Integration System - http://localhost/Documents/index_1280.htm (Version: 2.0.474.0)	
	BOSCH
10:51:19 AM	
Building Integration System - get the power to manage New detectors  Building Integration System - get the power to manage  Fire - Intrusion - Access Control - Video -Public Address - Automation - and more	Building Integration System

### 3.11

# **1** Starting the Access Engine Dialog Manager

The dialog manager can be started exclusively from client workstations. The BIS server can also be used as a workstation.

Click control to call the Access Engine's dialog manager. A short check of user rights and a composition of the dialogs occurs, based on the user and workstation profiles before the dialog manager shows the menus and dialogs.

Initializing		
	Reading dialog hierarchy	

# 3.12 ACE Debug Logfiles

To configure the logging for ACE components select the dialog **Administration** > **ACE Debug logfiles** 

The right to make changes in this dialog must be assigned under the dialog **Administration > ACE User Profiles** dialog.

The default configuration is that no check boxes are selected. This setting provides only minimal logging for ACE.

🚴 BI	S Configuration Browser							
File	Edit Extras Help							
2	License	🖌 Appl	ly	🗙 Discard				
12	Server structure							
0	Information							
හී	Authorizations	_						
🛛 🎁	Operators		UMS log files					
C 🖀	ACE Licenses	Description Create standard logfiles (Technicians) Create extended logfiles (Support)						
18	ACE User profiles	▶ DMS						
- 8	ACE Workstation profiles	Terminal						
- ዳ	ACE Workstation rights							
3	ACE Workstations							
14	ACE Debug logfiles	Ν	MAC log f	iles				
	-		N	IAC name	Create standard logfiles (Technicians)	Create extended logfiles (Support)		
вQ	A destated as bins	I	M	AC				
Y.	Administration							

### DMS log files

Under DMS log files you can configure two kinds of logging:

- **DMS.** All the logs created by server processes.

If you select one of these check boxes the logging starts immediately.

Terminal. All logs created by ACE workstation and Configuration Browser dialogs.
 If you select one of these check boxes the logging will begin after you save and reload the configuration.

### **MAC log files**

Under **MAC log files** you can configure the amount of detail logged by the Main Access Controller.



### Notice!

MAC restarts automatically

If you make and apply any changes to the log file check boxes, then the MAC process will restart automatically. During the usually short restart period it will not be able to handle access requests.

The amount of detail for both DMS and MAC log files is set by the check boxes. Use them as follows

Select none of the checkboxes (default setting) if the default minimal logging is sufficient.
 Note that clearing the check boxes does not delete existing log files. Delete the files manually if they are no longer required.

- Select the check box **Create Standard logfiles (Technician)** if you require moderate detail in the log files.
- Select the check box Create Extended Log files (Support) for greater detail, and if requested by technical support

# 4 Creating and Administrating Areas

# 4.1 Divisions

This section describes how to create Divisions in the system.

### Introduction

The system may be licensed optionally to provide joint access control for a facility which is shared by any number of independent parties, called **Divisions**.

System operators can have one or more divisions assigned to them. Operators then see only the persons, devices and entrances of those divisions.

Where the **Divisions** feature is not licensed, all objects managed by the system belong to a single division called **Common**.

### **Creating Divisions**

### Prerequisites

The Divisions feature is licensed for your installation.

### Dialog path

- BIS Configuration browser > Locations > Divisions

### Procedure

- 1. Click the + button or right-click **Common** and select **Add new division** in the context menu.
  - A new Division is created with a default name.
- 2. Overwrite the default name and (optional) enter a description for the benefit of other operators.
- 3. Click in the **Color** column to assign a color to help distinguish the division's assets in the user interface.
- 4. Click **Apply** to save

BIS Configuration Browser		-	_		×
File Edit Extras Help					
Divisions	✓ Apply 🗙 Discard		Θ	BOS	бСН
E Detector placement	+ 2				
ACE Areas	Division / Color	Description			
	Common Common Division				
	ACME Corp 1st floor tennant				
	BCME Corp 2nd floor tennant				_
Administration					
Cocations					
Connections					
Infrastructure					
General settings					
Logging / Protocol					
Tools					
». •					
🎥 BIS	Ready 🥵 C:\MgtS\Custome				

### Assigning Divisions within the Tree structure

This section describes how to assign divisions to parts of the logical Tree structure. The tree structure is created by system administrators, and is an abstract representation of the relationships of areas and devices in the configuration.

4.1.1

### Prerequisites

- The Divisions feature is licensed for your installation.
- You have created at least one Division in the Divisions dialog.

### Dialog path

BIS Configuration browser > Locations > Tree structure

### Procedure

- 1. In the **Location tree** pane, in the tree structure dialog, select a tree node (operator, device or detector) to which you wish to assign a Division
- 2. From the **Division:** drop-down list above the tree, select the Division to which the tree node should be assigned
  - The check box of selected tree node changes to the color of the chosen Division.
- 3. Click Apply to save
  - The tree node and its subordinate nodes will only be visible to operators of the chosen Division.

### 4.1.2 Assigning Divisions in Detector placement

The **Detector placement** dialog is for linking concrete devices to floor plans and the abstract logical tree structure.

This section describes how to assign devices, with their groups and detectors, to locations in the logical tree structure, and so indirectly to that location's Division.

### Prerequisites

- The Divisions feature is licensed for your installation.
- You have created at least one Division in the Divisions dialog.

### **Dialog path**

- BIS Configuration browser > Locations > Detector placement

### Procedure

- 1. In the **Location tree** pane, in the **Detector placement** dialog, select a tree node in a division to which you wish to assign a device.
- 2. In the **Devices** pane, select a tree node corresponding to a real or virtual device
  - The Groups pane fills with assignable devices.
- 3. From the **Groups** pane, drag and drop a list element onto the **Mapped detectors of location** pane, **Detector directly at location** tab.
  - The system addresses of the device appear in the **Address** list.
  - Note that if you drag and drop a part of an ACE door model, such as a door or a reader, , then the entire entrance is mapped, along with all its subordinate parts.
- 4. Click **Apply** to save
  - The device and its subordinate nodes will only be visible to operators with authorizations for the chosen division.

## 4.2 Access control Areas

### Introduction to Areas

Secured facilities can be divided into Areas. Areas can be of any size: one or several buildings, single floors or even single rooms.

Some uses of Areas are:

- The localization of individual persons within the secured facilities.
- The estimation of the number of persons within a given area, in case of an evacuation or other emergency.
- Limiting the number of persons or vehicles in an area:
   When the predefined population limit is reached, further admissions can be rejected until persons or vehicles leave the area.

- Implementing access sequence control and anti-passback

The system distinguishes between two types of access-controlled areas

- Areas for persons
- Areas for vehicles (parking lots)

Each area may have sub-areas for finer granularity of control. Areas for persons may have up to 3 levels of nesting, and areas for parking lots only 2, namely the overall parking lot and parking zones, between 1 and 24 in number.

The default area, which exists in all installations, is called **Outside**. It serves as the parent for all user-defined areas of both kinds: person and parking lots.

An area is not usable unless at least one entrance leads into it.

Device Editor **DevEdit** can be used to assign a location area and a destination area to any entrance. When someone scans a card at a reader belonging to an entrance, the person's new location becomes the destination area of that entrance.



#### Notice!

Access sequence control and anti-passback require both entrance and exit readers at the areas' entrances.

Turnstile-type entrances are strongly recommended to prevent accidental or deliberate "tailgating "

# Procedure for creating areas

### Prerequisites

As a system operator you require an authorization from your system administrator to create areas.

#### Dialog path (ACE)

BIS Configuration Browser > Locations > ACE areas

1.	Select the node <b>Outside</b> , or one of its children, and click		in the toolbar.	
	Alternatively, right-click <b>Outside</b> to add an area via its con	text m	enu.	
	All areas created initially receive a unique name of Area p	lus a ni	umeric suffix.	

In the popup window select its type, that is Area for persons or Parking lot for vehicles.

Note that only **Outside** can have children of both types. Any sub-area of these children always inherits the type of its parent.

- **Areas** for persons can be nested to three levels. For each area or sub area you can define a maximum population.
- Parking lots are virtual entities consisting of at least one parking zone. If the population of a parking lot does not need to be limited by the system, 0 is displayed. Otherwise the maximum number of parking spaces per zone is 9999, and the parking lot main pane displays the sum of all the spaces in its zones.

#### Procedure for editing areas

- 1. Click an Area in the hierarchy to select it.
- 2. Overwrite one or more of the following attributes in the main pane of the dialog.

#### Name

The default name, which you may overwrite.

Description

A free-text description of the area.

Maximum number of	Default value 0 (zero) for no-limit.
persons / cars	Else, enter an integer for its maximum population.

#### Notes:

2.

- An area cannot be moved by dragging and dropping to a different branch of the hierarchy. If necessary, delete the area and recreate it on another branch.
- The Division field is read-only in this dialog. To change the Division of an area use the Detector placement dialog and select the area in the Devices pane.

#### Procedure for deleting areas.

1. Click an area in the hierarchy to select it.



Click **Delete** or right-click to delete via the context menu.

Note: an area cannot be deleted until all its children have been deleted.

### Creating areas for vehicles (parking lot, parking zone)

If you select an area type of **Parking lot** a popup window appears.

Name	Count	Add
Central parking_01	20 🕂	
Central parking_02	15	Delete
Central parking_03	50	
Central parking_04	100	

1. Enter a name in the field **Name starts with** to create a trunk name for all its parking subareas or **parking zones**.

Up to 24 **parking zones** can be created using the **Add** button, and each will have the trunk name plus a 2-digit suffix.

2. If the system is to limit the population of these areas, enter the number of parking spaces in the **Count** column. If no population limit is required, enter 0.

**Note:** The maximum population of the entire parking lot is the sum of these numbers. Only parking zones can contain parking spaces; the **parking lot** is only a virtual entity consisting of at least one **parking zone**. The maximum number of parking spaces per zone is 9999.

### Creating entrances for parking lots

As with normal areas, parking lots require an entrance. The appropriate door model is **Parking lot 05c**.

For monitoring the population of a parking lot 2 entrances with this door model are required on the same AMC, one for ingress and one for egress.

### Prerequisite

Create a parking lot with at least one parking zone, as described above.

Dialog path

Connections > tab Device data

Procedure

- 1. In the device hierarchy, create an AMC, or select an AMC that has no dependent entrances.
- 2. Right-click the AMC and select **New entrance**
- 3. In the **New entrance** popup window select Entrance model **Parking lot 05c** and add an inbound reader of the type installed at the parking lot entrance.
- 4. Click **OK** to close the popup window.
- 5. Select this newly created entrance in the device hierarchy.
  - Note that the system has automatically designated the reader as an Entry reader.
- 6. In the main editing pane, on tab **Parking lot 05c**, select from the **Destination** pull-down menu the parking lot that you created previously.
- 7. Right-click the AMC again, and create another entrance of type **Parking lot 05c** as above.
  - Note that this time you can only select an outbound reader.
  - Click **OK** to close the popup window.
- 8. Select this second newly created entrance in the device hierarchy
  - Note that the system has automatically designated the second reader as an Exit reader.

# 4.2.1 Limiting populations in access areas

### Prerequisite

The operator's **ACE User profile** requires special permission to limit the population of access areas.

- 1. Navigate to Administration > ACE User profiles
- 2. Load the operator's profile in the **Profile name** box
- 3. Select Areas from the list of dialogs

The **Special functions** box appears at the bottom of the dialog

- 4. Select the check box **Set maximum number of persons** in the **Special functions** box.
- 5. Click **Apply** to save the changes to the profile.

### Procedure

Dialog path: Client main menu > **System data** > **Areas** 

- 1. Load the name of the area in the **Area name** box
- 2. Click the **Edit** button and enter the maximum population in the **Max. number of persons** box
- 3. **Save** your settings

5

# Connection Server AccessEngine

# 5.1 Device Editor basics

### Introduction

The ACE Device Editor, DevEdit, is best used for adding and deleting a smaller numbers of entrances and devices, or for adding, modifying or deleting individual parameters. DevEdit is not suitable for creating large hierarchies of devices from scratch. For bulk data use the import function.

### Opening the Device Editor

To open the Device Editor (DevEdit) in the BIS Configuration Browser, click **Connections** and select **AccessEngine** in the **Connection servers** tree. The device tree is shown to the right of it.



Any devices that have already been configured appear in the device tree. The tree can be viewed by clicking the symbol to expand one level, and the icon in the toolbar to expand the entire tree.

The main part of the dialog, to the right of the Device Editor, shows the configurable properties of the device that is currently selected in the device tree.

### Using the DevEdit toolbar

The main DevEdit toolbar buttons have the following functions:

Button	Shortcut	Description
+	Ctrl + N	Creates a new device below the selected node. Alternatively, right-click the node to invoke its context menu.
	Ctrl + E	Creates a new extension board AMC-EXT on the selected AMC. Alternatively, right-click the node to invoke its context menu.

	Ctrl-A	Expands and collapses the hierarchy.
C)	Ctrl-K	Refreshes the data by reloading them from the database. If more than one DMS is present then this button invokes a dialog to select between them.
×	Del	Deletes the selected item and all beneath it.

### Device-tree levels

- All devices belong to a DMS. Only one DMS can be edited at one time. That DMS must be selected when you enter the Device Editor.
- To edit a different DMS click the refresh button  $\overline{c}$  to re-invoke the DMS selection dialog.
- Below the DMS are the Main Access Controllers (MAC)
- Below the MACs are the local access controllers of type Access Modular Controller (AMC).
- The next levels contain the devices controlled by the AMCs, and their dependents.

The following table lists the more common devices and their icons:

🐨 or 🐼	AMC 4W - with and without connection to the DMS
🔊 or 😿	AMC 4R4 - with and without connection to the DMS
<b>ب</b> اب	Entrance
<b>I</b>	Door, Barrier, Turnstile
H	Reader
18	AMC extension board
<b>a</b>	Digital input (DIP)
<b>B</b>	Digital output (DOP)

When you create a new device in the tree the system increments numeric suffixes to the device names, to ensure uniqueness.

### **Properties pane**

The main pane of the dialog shows the configurable properties of the device that is currently selected in the device tree. Depending on the type of device selected, the properties may be grouped into several tabs.

### Saving changes

To save the changes you have made to the configuration, click the **Apply** button. Newly created or modified items are marked with an asterisk (\*) until they are saved. It is recommended that you save new items before deleting others. You can only exit DevEdit by saving or discarding all changes:

### **Consistency checks**

DevEdit will not allow you to create invalid configurations. For example, you cannot create an AMC below another AMC.

As in the bulk import process, all configuration changes are checked for accuracy and completeness. Any errors detected are listed in detail in a dialog box:

List of errors		
Object Erromumber	Attribute 'Name' (Value 'AMC 4-W-1') already exists in database	Cancel

To locate the misconfigured device in the overall configuration, select it in the left-hand window of the errors dialog.

After closing the errors dialog the device will be brought into focus in the device tree, and the misconfigured parameter in the main editor window.

You cannot save a configuration until all errors have been corrected.

### Refreshing the display of the device tree

Click the Refresh button  $\vec{c}$  to ensure that all changes made in various dialogs of the Configuration Browser and the device editor are displayed correctly and completely.

### 5.2 Configuration mode and overrides

Configuration mode is the default state of access control devices in the device editor. In configuration mode, an authorized user of AMS or BIS ACE can make changes to devices in the device editor, and the ACS propagates the changes immediately to subordinate devices. An operator can **override** configuration mode by sending commands directly to access control devices from outside the device editor. This is common, for example, when an operator is handling incoming messages and alarms. Until the operator sends the **Restore configuration** command, the device remains in Operation mode .

If a configuration user selects a device in the device editor while it is in operation mode, then the main property page of the device displays the notification:

#### This device is not in configuration mode.

They can make and save configuration changes, but the changes are buffered, and do not come into effect until the alarm operation mode is ended and configuration mode is restored.

### 5.3 MACs and RMACs in flat topologies

### Access Engine topologies

An Access Engine system can have one or more Data Management Systems (DMS) .

- If it has one DMS, then its topology is called **flat** or non-hierarchical, even if multiple computers are involved.
- If it has more than one DMS then its topology is called **hierarchical**.

A computer that hosts a DMS is known as a DMS server .

This chapter deals with the configuration of MACs and RMACs in flat topologies only.

#### The MAC

A Main Access Controller (MAC) is a set of processes running on a computer. The MAC maintains the access control data of the local access controllers (AMCs) connected to it in the device tree; it makes access-control decisions that affect multiple AMCs, and it replenishes the AMCs' data if their connections are temporarily lost.

MACs are subordinate only to the DMS in the device tree.

Every DMS has at least one MAC. One MAC can run on the same computer as its DMS, but it is easier to maintain a configuration where each MAC has its own computer, which is known as a MAC Server .

### The RMAC

MACs may be twinned with redundant MACs (RMACs) to provide failover capability, and hence more resilient access control. In this case the access control data are replicated automatically between the two. If one of the pair fails, then the other takes control of the local access controllers below it.

### Note on the illustrations in this chapter and subchapters

IP addresses in the form \*.\*.\*.dd (where dd is an integer) stand for IP addresses that differ from others in the diagram only by their last digits.

### 5.3.1 Configuring a MAC on the DMS server without RMAC



For a minimal system configuration one MAC is required. In this case the MAC can reside on the DMS server.

### Procedure

On the DMS server open the Device Editor and create a MAC in the device tree as described in the section **Using the device editor**.

Select the MAC in the Device Editor. On the **MAC** tab, supply the following parameter values:

Parameter	Description
Name	The name that is to appear in the device tree, For example MAC-1.
Description	Optional description for the benefit of system operators
With RMAC (check box)	<leave blank=""></leave>
RMAC Port	<leave blank=""></leave>
Active (check box)	<b>Clear</b> this check box to suspend temporarily the real-time synchronization between this MAC and DMS. This is advantageous after DMS-updates on larger systems, in order to avoid restarting all the MACs at once.
Load devices (check box)	<b>Clear</b> this check box to suspend temporarily the real-time synchronization between this MAC and its subordinate devices. This shortens the time needed to open a MAC in the device editor.

Parameter	Description
IP address	Localhost 127.0.0.1
Time zone	<b>IMPORTANT:</b> The time zone of the MAC and all its subordinate AMCs.
Division	(If applicable) The Division to which the MAC belongs.

Because this local MAC has no redundant failover MAC, it is not necessary to run the MACInstaller tool for it. Simply leave the two RMAC parameters on the **MAC** tab blank.

### 5.3.2 Preparing MAC server computers to run MACs and RMACs

### Introduction

This section describes how to prepare computers to become MAC servers.

By default the first MAC in an access control system runs on the same computer as its Data Management Server (DMS), however, for enhanced resilience, it is recommended that the MAC run on a separate computer, which can assume access control tasks if the DMS computer goes down.

Separate computers where MACs or RMACs reside, are known as MAC servers regardless of whether they host a MAC or an RMAC.

In order to provide failover capability, MACs and RMACs **must** run on separate MAC servers.

### Procedure

Ensure that the following conditions are met on all participating MAC servers:

- 1. The operating systems of all the MAC servers must be currently supported by Microsoft, and have the latest updates installed.
- 2. The Administrator user on all servers has the same password
- 3. You are logged on as Administrator (if using MSTC, use only /Admin /Console sessions)
- 4. Disable IP V6. Note carefully the IP V4 address of each server.
- 5. Enable .NET 3.5 is on all participating computers.

Note: On Windows 10 and Windows Server operating systems it is enabled as a feature.

6. Reboot the computer.

## 5.3.3 Configuring a MAC on its own MAC server



### Prerequisites

 The MAC server computer has been prepared as described in the section *Preparing MAC* server computers to run MACs and RMACs, page 36

### Procedure

1. On the DMS server computer, in the device editor,
- Right click the MAC and select **Disable all LACs**.
- Deactivate the MAC by clearing the check boxes Activate and Load devices for this MAC.
- 2. On the MAC server computer, using the Windows program *services.msc* 
  - Stop the MAC service **AUTO\_MAC2**
  - Set the **Startup type** of this MAC service to **Manual**.
- 3. Start the MACInstaller.exe
  - For ACE this is found on the BIS installation media
     \AddOns\ACE\MultiMAC\MACInstaller (see the section, Using the MACInstaller tool, page 41 below).
- 4. Step through the screens of the tool, supplying values for the following parameters.

Scree n#	Parameter	Description
1	Destination Folder	The local directory where the MAC is to be installed. Take the default wherever possible.
2	Server	The name or the IP address of the server where the DMS is running.
2	Port (Port to DMS)	The port on the DMS server which will be used to receive communication from the MAC. Use 6001 for the first MAC on the DMS, and increment by 1 for each subsequent MAC.
2	Number (MAC System Number)	Set 1 for this and all MACs (as opposed to RMACs).
2	Twin (Name or IP address of partner MAC)	Leave this field blank as long as this MAC is to have no RMAC.
2	Configure Only (radio button)	Do not select, because you are not configuring a MAC on the main DMS login server.
2	<b>Update Software</b> (radio button)	Select this option because you are configuring a MAC on its own computer (MAC server), not on the main DMS login server.

5. After completing the tool, start the MAC process on the MAC server manually, using the Windows program *services.msc* 

- 6. On the DMS server, select the MAC in the Device Editor.
- 7. On the **MAC** tab, supply values for the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Name	The name that is to appear in the device tree, For example MAC-1.	
Description	Optional description for the benefit of system operators	
With RMAC (check box)	<leave blank=""></leave>	
RMAC Port	<leave blank=""></leave>	
Active (check box)	Select this check box now	
Load devices (check box)	Select this check box now	

Parameter	Description	
IP address	The IP address of the MAC server computer.	
Time zone	<b>IMPORTANT:</b> The time zone of the MAC and all its subordinate AMCs.	
Division	(If applicable) The <b>Division</b> to which the MAC belongs.	

#### Refer to

- Device Editor basics, page 32
- Using the MACInstaller tool, page 41
- Configuring a MAC on the DMS server without RMAC, page 35
- Adding RMACs to MACs, page 38

## 5.3.4 Adding RMACs to MACs

#### Introduction

MACs may be twinned with redundant MACs (RMACs) to provide failover capability, and hence more resilient access control. In this case the access control data are replicated automatically between the two. If one of the pair fails, then the other takes control of the local access controllers below it.

i

#### Notice!

Do not add RMACs to ordinary MACs until the ordinary MACs are installed and running correctly.

Data replication could otherwise be prevented or damaged.



#### Prerequisites

- The MAC for this RMAC has been installed as described in the previous sections, and is running correctly.
- The MAC server computer for the RMAC has been prepared as described in the section *Preparing MAC server computers to run MACs and RMACs, page 36*

#### Procedure

#### On the DMS server, in the Configuration browser

1. In the Device Editor, select the MAC for which the RMAC is to be added.

Parameter	Description	
With RMAC (check box)	<b>Clear</b> this check box until you have installed the corresponding RMAC on the redundant failover connection server	
Active (check box)	<b>Clear</b> this check box to suspend temporarily the real-time synchronization between this MAC and DMS. This is advantageous after DMS-updates on larger systems, in order to avoid restarting all the MACs at once.	
Load devices (check box)	<b>Clear</b> this check box to suspend temporarily the real-time synchronization between this MAC and its subordinate devices This shortens the time needed to open a MAC in the device editor.	

2. On the **MAC** tab, change the values for the following parameters:

3. Click the **Apply** button

4. Keep the Device Editor open as we will return to it presently.

#### On the MAC server for the MAC

To reconfigure the MAC to partner with an RMAC, proceed as follows.

- On the previously prepared MAC server computer, run the MACInstaller tool (see Using the MACInstaller tool) and set the following parameters:
  - Server: Name or IP address of the DMS server computer
  - Port: 6001
  - **Number:** 1 (all MACs have Number 1)
  - **Twin**: IP address of the computer where the RMAC will run.
  - **Update software**: Select this option, as you are configuring a MAC server, not the DMS server.

#### On the MAC server for the RMAC

To configure the RMAC, proceed as follows:

- On its own separate and prepared MAC server computer, run the MACInstaller tool (see Using the MACInstaller tool) and set the following parameters:
  - Server: Name or IP address of the DMS server computer
  - **Port**: 6001 (same as for the MAC)
  - Number: 2 (all RMACs have Number 2)
  - **Twin**: IP address of the computer where the twin MAC is running.
  - **Update software**: Select this option, as you are configuring a MAC server, not the DMS server.

#### Return to the Device editor on the DMS server

- 1. **IMPORTANT:** Ensure that both the MAC and RMAC, on their respective computers, are running and visible to each other on the network.
- 2. On the **MAC** tab, change the parameters as follows:

Parameter	Description	
With RMAC (check box)	Selected A new tab labeled RMAC appears next to the MAC tab.	
RMAC Port	6199 (the static default)	

Parameter	Description	
	All MACs and RMACs use this port to check whether their partners are running and accessible.	
Active (check box)	<b>Selected</b> This enables synchronization between this MAC and its subordinate devices.	
Load devices (check box)	<b>Selected</b> This shortens the time needed to open a MAC in the device editor.	

3. On the **RMAC** tab supply values for the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Name	The name that is to appear in the device tree. For example, if the corresponding MAC is named MAC-01 then this RMAC could be named RMAC-01.	
Description	Optional documentation for access control operators.	
IP address	The IP address of the RMAC.	
MAC Port	6199 (the static default) All MACs and RMACs use this port to check whether their partners are running and accessible.	

#### Refer to

- Device Editor basics, page 32

## 5.3.5 Adding further MAC/RMAC pairs

#### Introduction

Depending on the number of entrances to be controlled, and the degree of fault tolerance required, a large number of MAC/RMAC pairs can be added to the system configuration. For the exact number supported by your version, please consult the corresponding datasheet.



#### Procedure

For each additional MAC/RMAC pair...

- 1. Prepare the separate computers for MAC and RMAC as described in the section *Preparing MAC server computers to run MACs and RMACs, page 36*
- 2. Set up the MAC as described in the section *Configuring a MAC on its own MAC server, page 36*
- 3. Set up the RMAC for this MAC as described in the section *Adding RMACs to MACs, page* 38

Note that each MAC/RMAC pair transmits to a separate port on the DMS server. Therefore, for the parameter **Port (Port to DMS)** in *MACInstaller.exe*, use:

- 6001 for both computers in the first MAC/RMAC pair
- 6002 for both computers in the second MAC/RMAC pair
- etc.

In the Device Editor port *6199* can always be used for the parameters **MAC Port** and **RMAC Port**. This port number is reserved for the "handshake" within each MAC/RMAC pair, whereby each knows whether its partner is accessible or not.



#### Notice!

Reactivating MACs after system upgrades

After a system upgrade MACs and their AMCs are deactivated by default. Remember to reactivate them in the configuration browser by selecting the relevant check boxes in the device editor.

## 5.3.6 Using the MACInstaller tool

MACInstaller.exe is the standard tool for configuring and reconfiguring MACs and RMACs on their own computers (MAC servers). It collects parameter values for a MAC or RMAC, and makes the necessary changes in the Windows Registry.

# i

#### Notice!

Because the tool makes changes to the Windows Registry, it is necessary to stop any running MAC process before reconfiguring it.

The MACInstaller tool can be found on the installation medium under the following path: - \AddOns\ACE\MultiMAC\MACInstaller.exe

Through a series of screens it collects values for the parameters below.

Scree n#	Parameter	Description
1	Destination Folder	The local directory where the MAC is to be installed.
2	Server	The name or the IP address of the server where the DMS is running.
2	Port (Port to DMS)	The port number on the DMS server which will be used for communication between the MAC and the DMS. <b>See below for details.</b>
2	Number (MAC System Number)	Set 1 for all original MACs. Set 2 for all redundant failover MACs (RMACs).
2	Twin (Name or IP address of partner MAC)	The IP address of the computer where the redundant failover partner for this MAC server is to run. If not applicable leave this field blank.
2	<b>Configure Only</b> (radio button)	Select this option if you are reconfiguring a MAC on the main DMS login server. <b>See below for details</b>
2	Update Software (radio button)	Select this option if you are installing or reconfiguring a MAC on its own computer (MAC server), not on the main DMS login server. <b>See below for details</b>

#### Parameter: Port (Port to DMS)

Port numbers have the following numbering scheme:

- In a non-hierarchical system, where only one DMS server exists, each MAC and its corresponding RMAC transmit from the same port number, usually 6000. The DMS can communicate with only one of each MAC/RMAC pair at a time.
- The DMS receives signals from the first MAC or MAC/RMAC pair on port 6001, from the second MAC or MAC/RMAC pair on port 6002, and so on.

í

#### Notice!

DMS receiver port in hierarchical systems

Note that the numbering scheme for DMS receiver ports is different in hierarchical systems. For details see *MACs and RMACs in hierarchical topologies, page 133* 

#### Parameter: Number (MAC System Number)

This parameter is to distinguish original MACs from RMACs:

- All original MACs have the number 1.
- All redundant failover MACs (RMACs) have the number 2

#### Parameter: Configure Only (radio button)

Select this option to change the configuration of an existing MAC on the main DMS server, in particular to inform it of a newly installed RMAC on a different computer.

In this case, enter the IP address or hostname of the RMAC in the parameter  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Twin}}$  .

#### Parameter: Update Software (radio button)

Select this option on a computer other than the main DMS server, either to install an RMAC or to change its configuration.

In this case, enter the IP address or hostname of the RMAC's twin MAC in the parameter Twin.

#### Refer to

- MACs and RMACs in hierarchical topologies, page 133

## 5.3.7 New MAC commands in BIS

#### Introduction

In BIS Version 4.4 two new commands were added to the context menu for MACs in the BIS client. To invoke them, right-click a MAC in the BIS Client > **Device Overview** tab > **Devices** >

#### AccessEngine > Devices

– Switch

swaps the roles of the currently active MAC and its redundant backup RMAC. The active MAC becomes the redundant MAC and the redundant MAC becomes the active MAC.

#### - Synchronize

starts a synchronization of all the MAC database tables with the DMS.

## 5.4 Creating and configuring local access controllers

#### Creating an AMC local access controller

Access Modular Controllers (AMCs) are subordinate to Main Access Controllers (MACs) in the device editor.

To create an AMC:

- In the Device Editor, right-click a MAC and choose New Object from the context menu or
- 2. Click the 🕇 button.
- 3. Choose one of the following AMC types from the dialog that appears:

AMC 4W (default) with four Wiegand reader interfaces to connect up to four readers

AMC 4R4 with four RS485 reader interfaces to connect up to eight readers

Result: A new AMC entry of the chosen type is created in the DevEdit hierarchy

#### Local Access Controller - Variants and Extension boards

AMC2 4W	Access Modular	A maximum of four Wiegand readers can be
	<b>C</b> ontroller with four	configured to connect up to four entrances.
	Wiegand readers.	

		The controller supports eight input and eight output signals. If needed, extension boards can provide up to 48 additional input and output signals.
AMC2 4R4	Access Modular Controller with four RS485 reader-interfaces	A maximum of eight RS485 readers can be configured to connect up to eight entrances. The controller supports eight input and eight output signals. If needed, extension boards can provide up to 48 additional input and output signals.
AMC2 8I-80-EXT	Extension board for the AMC with eight input and output signals	Make additional signals available. Up to three extension boards can be connected to an AMC
AMC2 16I-160- EXT	Extension board for the AMC with sixteen input and output signals	
AMC2 8I-80-4W	Extension board for Wiegand AMC with eight input and output signals	

#### Mixing controller types within one installation

Access control systems are normally equipped with only one type of controller and reader. Software upgrades and growing installations can make it necessary to supplement existing hardware components with new ones. Even configurations combining RS485 variants (AMC 4R4) with Wiegand variants (AMC 4W) are possible, as long as the following caveats are heeded:

- RS485 readers transit a "telegram" which contains the code number as read.
- Wiegand readers transmit their data in such a way that they must be decoded with the help of the badge definition in order to preserve the code number in the correct form.
- Mixed controller operation can only function if both code numbers are constructed the same.

#### Activation/Deactivation of controllers

When first created, a new controller has the following option (check box) selected: **Communication to host enabled**.

This opens the network connection between the MAC and the controllers, so that any changed or extended configuration data are propagated to the controllers automatically. Deactivate this option to save network bandwidth, and so improve performance, while creating multiple controllers and their dependent devices (entrances, doors, readers, extension boards). In the device editor the devices are then marked with grayed icons. **IMPORTANT:** Be sure to reactivate this option when the configuration of devices is complete. This will keep the controllers continually updated with any configuration changes made at other levels.

## 5.4.1 AMC parameters and settings

**General Parameters of the AMC** 

-		
⊡ <mark>B</mark> MAC	AMC 4-R4   Inputs   Outputs   Terminals	
	Name : AMC 4-R4-1	
	Description: AMC	
	~ ·	
Door-2	Communication to host enabled: 🔽	
IIII OSDP V	Controller interface	
	Interface type: UDP -	
	PC com port: 0	
	Bus number: 1	
	IP address / host name: AMC2-D0K3	
	Port number: 10001	
	Program: LCMV6221.RUN : HID, AMC-4R4	
	Power supply supervision:	
	No LAC accounting:	
	Division: Common	

## **Configuring AMC parameters**

Parameter	Possible values	Description
Controller name	Restricted alphanumeric: 1 - 16 digits	ID generation (default) guarantees unique names, but users can overwrite them. If you overwrite a name you must make sure the IDs are unique.
Controller description	alphanumeric: 0 - 255 digits	Free text.
Communication to host enabled	0 = deactivated (check box is cleared) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	Default value = active The status of the host connection (active/ inactive) is indicated by the icons of the controllers in the device tree. <b>OD</b> Deactivation provides a means of creating and parameterizing devices to be included in the access control system later. Do not activate devices until you put them into

		operation. This increases performance by preventing unnecessary polling of the devices by the host. Note that updating the access control system to a new version deactivates all controllers initially (the check boxes are cleared). Select and clear the check boxes of controllers to test them individually in the updated software.
Controller Interface		
Interface Type	COM	COM where connection to the AMC is via one of the MAC COM ports. UDP (= user datagram protocol) where connection is by network. When this connection type is selected, the parameters <b>IP Address/ Hostname</b> and <b>UDP port</b> require values.
		DIP switches 1 and "5" on the AMC to ON.
PC COM port	numeric: with COM-ports: 1 - 256 with UDP-ports: 1 - 65535	Number of the COM ports at which this AMC is connected to the MAC. For ethernet connections via converters, virtual COM-ports are generated and shown here. With type "UDP" enter the port via which the MAC will receive information from the AMC. If this port is unknown the field can be left empty and a free port will be selected automatically.
Bus number	numeric: 1 - 8	Using the interface adapter AMC-MUX up to 8 controllers can be configured on one COM port. In such cases enter the unique address of each AMC as given by its DIP switch. <b>Note:</b> Switch 5 can be ignored here because only the first 4 switches are used for addressing. For UDP connections use the default setting (=0)
IP Address/ Hostname	Network name or IP address of the AMC	This input box is only settable if <b>UDP</b> is selected as the port type. If IP addresses are allocated by DHCP then the network name of the AMC should be provided so that the AMC can be located after a restart even if the IP address has changed.

		For networks without DHCP the IP address must be given.
UDP Port	numeric: 10001 (default)	This input box is only activated if <b>UDP</b> is selected as port type. This is the AMC port which will receive the MAC-messages.
Further Parameters		-
Program	alphanumeric	File name of the program to be loaded into the AMC. The available programs are located in the BIN-directory of the MAC, and can be selected from a list. For convenience the protocol and the description are also shown. This parameter is set automatically as programs are loaded automatically depending on which readers are connected, and the parameter is overridden in the case of a reader/program mismatch.
Power supply supervision	0= deactivated (check box is clear) 1= activated (check box is selected)	Supervision of the supply voltage. If the power supply drops then an informational message is generated. The supervision function assumes the prerequisite of a UPS (uninterruptible power supply), so that a message can be generated. 0 = no supervision 1 = supervision activated
No LAC accounting	0= deactivated (check box is clear) 1= activated (check box is selected)	Select this check box for AMC devices that work jointly to provide access to parking lots, where only the parent MAC keeps account of the number of units entering and leaving. <b>Note</b> that, if this option is selected and the AMC offline, the AMC will not be able to prevent access to overcrowded areas, as it has no access to the full population count.
Division	Default value "Common"	Relevant only if the <b>Divisions</b> feature is licensed.

#### **Configuring AMC inputs**

Name	Serial resistor	Parallel resistor	Time model	Messages	
01, AMC 4-W-8	2K2	1K2	<no model="" time=""></no>	03, Open, close, Line cut, short circui	
02, AMC 4-W-8	1K5	1K	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
03, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
04, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
05, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
06, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
07, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
U8, AMC 4-W-8	none	none	<no model="" time=""></no>	00,	
Li	ne cut, short circuit		5 C 1K2		
		С 1К С 2К С 2К	8 C 1K8 2 C 2K2 7 C 2K7 3 C 3K3		
		C 1K C 2K C 2K C 3K C 3K C 3K	8 C 1K8 2 C 2K2 7 C 2K7 3 C 3K3 3 C 3K9 7 C 4K7		
		C 1K C 2K C 2K C 3K C 3K C 3K C 4K C 5K	8         C         1K8           2         C         2K2           7         C         2K7           3         C         3K3           9         C         3K9           7         C         4K7           5         C         5K6		
		С 1К С 2К С 2К С 3К С 3К С 3К С 5К С 5К	8     C     1K8       2     C     2K2       7     C     2K7       3     C     3K3       9     C     3K9       7     C     4K7       5     C     5K6       3     C     6K8		

This dialog is divided into four panes:

- List of the inputs by name
- The input types
- The events which will be signaled by the inputs
- The resistor types used with analog mode

#### Parameters of inputs

The parameters of the AMC inputs are described in the following table:

Column name	Description
Name	Numbering of the input (from 01 to 08) and name of the appropriate AMC or AMC-EXT.
Serial resistor	Display of the set resistor value for the serial resistor. "none" or "" = digital mode
Parallel resistor	Display of the set resistor value for the parallel resistor. "none" or "" = digital mode
Time model	Name of the selected time model

Messages	Indenture number and designation of the messages which will be generated
	00 = no messages
	01 = if events <b>Open</b> , <b>close</b> were activated
	02 = if events Line cut, short circuit were activated
	03 = if both event options were activated
Assigned	Using Entrance Model 15 the signal name of the DIP is displayed.

Use the Ctrl and Shift keys when clicking to select multiple inputs simultaneously. Any values you change will apply to all the selected inputs.

#### Input type

The resistors can be operated in **Digital mode** or **Analog mode (4 state)**.

The default is **Digital mode**: only the door states **open** and **close** are detected.

In Analog mode the wire states  $\ensuremath{\text{Line cut}}$  and  $\ensuremath{\text{Short}}$  circuit are detected additionally.

Door open	sum of the serial (R $_{\rm s})$ and parallel (R $_{\rm P})$ resistor values: R $_{\rm s}$ + R $_{\rm P}$
Door closed	is equal to the serial resistor values: $R_s$
Circuit break	sum of the serial ( $\rm R_s)$ and parallel ( $\rm R_P)$ resistor values approaching infinity.
Short-Circuit	sum of the serial ( $\rm R_s)$ and parallel ( $\rm R_P)$ resistor values is equal to zero.

#### **Events and Time models**

Depending on the operation mode, the following door states are detected and reported: **Open**, Closed, Line cut and Short circuit.

Select their respective check boxes to enable the AMC to transmit these states as events to the overall system.

Select a **Time model** from the drop-down list of the same name to restrict the transmission of the events to the times defined by the model. For example, the **Open** event might only be significant outside of normal business hours.

#### Resistors

The resistors are set to "none" or "---" in the default **Digital mode**.

In **Analog mode** the values for the serial and parallel resistors can be set by selecting their respective radio buttons.

none, 1K, 1K2, 1K5, 1K8, 2K2, 2K7, 3K3, 3K9, 4K7, 5K6, 6K8, 8K2 (in 100 ohm)

Depending on the resistor value selected, only restricted ranges are available for the corresponding resistor.

The following tables show in the left columns the selected values, and in the right columns the available ranges of the other resistor.

Serial	Range		Parallel	Range	
"none" or ""	1K to 8K2		"none" or ""	1K to 8K2	
1K	1K to 2K2		1K	1K to 1K8	
1K2	1K to 2K7		1K2	1K to 2K7	
1K5	1K to 3K9		1K5	1K to 3K3	
1K8	1K to 6K8		1K8	1K to 3K9	
2K2	1K2 to 8K2		2K2	1K to 4K7	

2K7	1K2 to 8K2	2K7	1K2 to 5K6
3K3	1K5 to 8K2	3K3	1K5 to 6K8
3K9	1K8 to 8K2	3K9	1K5 to 8K2
4K7	2K2 to 8K2	4K7	1K8 to 8K2
5K6	2K7 to 8K2	5K6	1K8 to 8K2
6K8	3K3 to 8K2	6K8	1K8 to 8K2
8K2	3K9 to 8K2	8K2	2K2 to 8K2

#### **Configuring AMC Outputs - Overview**

This dialog page provides the configuration of each output on an AMC or AMC-EXT, and contains three main areas:

- list box with an overview of the parameter that is set for every output
- configuration options to the outputs selected in the list
- definition of conditions for the activation of the outputs



#### Selecting AMC outputs in the table

To configure output contacts, first select the corresponding line in the upper table. Use the Ctrl and Shift keys to select multiple lines, if required. Changes made in the lower part of the window will affect only the outputs that you select.

Output	Action type	Max. duration	Delay	Period	Pulsing	Duration	Count	Time model	Messages
01, AMC 4-W-8	used	by an	entrance !					000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
02, AMC 4-W-8	used	by an	entrance !					000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
03, AMC 4-W-8	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
04, AMC 4-W-8	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
05, AMC 4-W-8	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
06, AMC 4-W-8	used	by an	entrance !					000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
07, AMC 4-W-8	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00
08, AMC 4-W-8	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	000, <no model="" time=""></no>	00

Lines whose outputs have already been assigned via a door model, or elsewhere, are shown in light gray with the information "**used by an entrance!**". Such outputs cannot be configured further.

Lines selected by you are in dark grey.

#### Parameters of AMC outputs

Column name	Description
Output	current numbering of the exits at the respective AMC or AMC-EXT 01 to 08 with AMC and AMC_IO08 01 to 16 with AMC_IO16
Action type	indication of the selected action type 1 = Follow state 2 = Trigger 3 = Alternating
Max. duration	length in seconds the signal [1 - 9999; 0 = always, if the converse message fails to appear] - only with action type "1"
Delay	delay in seconds until the signal is given [0 - 9999] - only with action types "1" and "2"
Period	period in seconds the signal is given - only with action type "2"
Pulsing	activation of the impulse - otherwise the signal is given constantly
Duration	impulse length
Count	number of impulses per second
Time model	name of the selected time model
Messages	marking of the message activity 00 = no messages 03 = events are reported
Assigned	Using Entrance Model 15 the signal name of the DOP is displayed.

#### **Outputs: Events, Action, Pulsing**

All entries from the list above are generated by using the check boxes and input fields in the dialog areas **Events**, **Action**, and **Pulsing**. Selecting a list entry indicates the respective settings in these areas. This also holds for the multiple choice of list entries, provided that the parameters to all selected outputs are equal. Changes to the parameter settings are adopted for all entries selected in the list.

Create events: IV Time model:  (	001, normal week 📃
ehaviour	Pulsing
Action type: 2 - Trigger	Enable: 🔽
Max. duration: 0 sec.	Pulse width: 1/10 sec
Delay: 1 sec.	# of pulses: 0
Period: 10 sec.	

Select the check box **Create events** if a message should be sent for the output activated. If these messages are to be sent only during special periods, e.g. at night or at weekends, then assign a suitable **time model**.

Action type	Max. duration	Delay	Period	Pulsing/Enable	Pulse width	Number of pulses
Follow state	0 = always 1 - 9999	0 - 9999	no	yes	1 - 9999	None
Trigger	no	0 - 9999	0 - 9999 if pulsing is <b>not</b> enabled	yes disables period	1 - 9999	1 - 9999
Alternating	no	no	no	yes	1 - 9999	no

The following parameters can be set for the individual action types:

#### Pulse diagrams



- 1 = Delay time
- 2 = max. activation time
- 3 = Pulse width



- 1 = Delay time
- 2 = Action period
- 3 = Pulse width
- 4 = Pulse count (=2)



#### AMC output data

The lower part of the **Outputs** dialog contains:

- A list box with the **states** available for the selected outputs.
- A table with the outputs and the states that are configured to trigger them.

Door closed		~							
Door left oper	n								
Door open									
Door opened	unauthorised								
Host commun	nication dowr								
Host commun	nication ok								
Input activate	ed								
Input disabled	ł								
Input enabled	1								
Input normal									
Input open ta	mper								
Input short cir	cuit tamper								
	and the second se								
Output reset									
Output reset Output set									
Output reset Output set Power fail		<b>&gt;</b>							
Output reset Output set	>								
Output reset Output set	>	Description	Param11	Param12	Op2	Description	Parameter21	Parameter22	
Output reset Output set Power fail Output Output Output O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O	> / Op1	Description Door open	Param11 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMD0	Op2	Description	Parameter21	Parameter22	
Output reset Output set Power fail Output Output 07 07	<ul> <li>Op1</li> <li>OR</li> </ul>	Description Door open Door closed	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO	Op2	Description	Parameter21	Parameter22	2
Output reset Output set Power fail Output O7 07 + 07	<ul> <li>Op1</li> <li>OR</li> <li>OR</li> <li>OR</li> </ul>	Description Door open Door closed Door opened	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2	Description	Parameter21	Parameter22	2
Output reset Output set Coutput set Output Output Output O7 O7 O7 O7 O7 O7	△ Op1 OR OR OR OR	Description Door open Door closed Door opened Door left open	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2 AND	Description Door left open	Parameter21	Parameter22	2
Output reset Output set Power fail Output O7 07 07 07	△ Op1 OR OR OR OR	Description Door open Door closed Door opened Door left open	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2 AND	Description Door left open	Parameter21	Parameter22	2
Output reset Output set Power fail Output ) 07 07 07 07 07	△ Op1 OR OR OR	Description Door open Door closed Door opened Door left open	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2 AND	Description Door left open	Parameter21	Parameter22 NORMDOOR,	2
Output reset Output set Power fail Output OUtput OUtput OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT	✓ Op1 OR OR OR OR	Description Door open Door closed Door opened Door left open	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2 AND	Description Door left open	Parameter21	Parameter22	2
Output reset Output set Power fail >> Output >> 07 07 07 07 07	✓ Op1 OR OR OR OR	Description Door open Door closed Door opened Door left open	Param11 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b 10b, DM 10b	Param12 NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO NORMDO	Op2 AND	Description Door left open	Parameter21 10b, DM 10b	Parameter22	2

#### Configuring states to trigger outputs

You can configure the outputs you have selected above to be triggered by individual states or logical combinations of states.

- Select one or several outputs in the upper list box.
- Select a State from the **State** list.
- If there are several devices or installations to a selected status which can transmit this state, the button *m* is activated beside the button *m*.

Click  $\supseteq$  (or double-click the status) to create for each selected exit an entry of its status with the first device (for example, AMC, first entrance) and the installation (for example, first signal, first door).

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2

By clicking *s*, the selected status is transferred to the list and created together with an OR-shortcut for every installed device (for example, all AMC entrances).

Exit 🌷	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 02, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 03, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 04, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 05, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 06, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 07, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 08, AMC 4-W-2

- Several states can be assigned over one OR-shortcut.

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04	-	Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input normal	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>

Shortcuts with AND are also possible:

- A status must already be assigned to which another condition is added by selecting it in an arbitrary column.
- Then another status is selected and connected to the marked status by clicking ....

Exit 🌖	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12	Operand2	Description	Parameter21	Parameter22
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2				
04	OR	Input normal	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2				
04	OR	Door open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>	AND	Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>



## Notice!

Up to 128 OR-shortcuts can be assigned to every output. To every assigned condition, **one** AND-short cut can be created.

After a status is assigned for a device or installation, this can also be assigned for all other existing devices and installations.

- Select the assigned entry in an arbitrary column.



This status is created for all existing devices and installations by clicking

#### Modifying the parameters of outputs

List entries can be changed.

With several devices or installations to which the assigned status could match, the first devices and installations of this type are always set.

In the columns **Param11** and **Param21** (with AND-shortcuts) the devices (for example, AMC, entrance) are displayed. The columns **Param12** and **Param22** contain special installations (for example, input signal, door, reader).

If several devices (for example, I/O boards) or installations (for example, additional signals, readers) exist, the mouse pointer changes while pointing to this column.

Exit 🌎	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input normal	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >> لركي

A double-click on the column entry adds a button brings up a drop-down list of valid entries for the parameter.

Exit 🌎	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input normal	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	01. AMC 4-W-2 🔻
04	OR	Door open	06a, Timemgm	01 AMC 4.W-2
				02, AMC 4-W-2 03, AMC 4-W-2 04, AMC 4-W-2 05, AMC 4-W-2 06, AMC 4-W-2 07, AMC 4-W-2 08, AMC 4-W-2

Changing the entries in the columns **Param11** and **Param21** updates the entries in columns **Param12** and **Param22**:

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
04	OR	Input normal	01, AMC_I0, AMC_I016_002_1	In, 01, AMC_I016_002_1

## Notice!

This is only possible for columns **Param11**, **Param12**, **Param21** and **Param22**.

If there are no other options (for example, because only one entrance was configured), the mouse pointer does not change and all field are grey. If this entry is double-clicked, this is interpreted as a deletion command, and the message box for verifying the deleting appears.

#### Deleting the states that trigger outputs

Selected assignments can be removed by clicking  $\blacksquare$  '<' (or by double-clicking the list entry). A message box will request confirmation for the deletion.

If several states have been associated with an output, then they can all be deleted together as follows:

- Select the first list entry (the one which has no entry in the column **Op1**) and then click the '<<' button <u>select</u>.
- Alternatively, double-click the first entry.
  - A popup window appears. Confirm or abort the deletion.
  - If you confirm deletion then a second popup asks whether you wish to delete all associated entries (answer Yes), or only the selected entry (answer No).

To delete additional states that qualify the first state by an AND operator in column **Op2**, click anywhere in the line and then click the 'minus' button , which is only active if a qualifying AND state is present in that line.

#### State description

The following table provides an overview of all selectable states, their type number, and description.

The list field **State** contains these parameters as well - they are indicated by scrolling right on the list.

State	Туре	Description
Input activated	1	Local input

Input normal	2	Local input
Input short circuit tamper	3	Local input with resistor configured
Input open tamper	4	Local input with resistor configured
Input enabled	5	Local input activated by time model
Input disabled	6	Local input deactivated by time model
Output set	7	Local output, not current output
Output reset	8	Local input, not current input
Door open	9	GID of the entrance, door number
Door closed	10	GID of the entrance, door number
Door opened unauthorized	11	GID of the entrance, door number, replaces "Door open" (9)
Door left open	12	GID of the entrance, door number
Reader shows access granted	13	Reader address
Reader shows access denied	14	Reader address
Time model active	15	Configured time model
Tamper reader	16	Reader address
Tamper AMC	17	
Tamper I/O board	18	
Power fail	19	for battery powered AMC only
Power good	20	for battery powered AMC only
Host communication ok	21	
Host communication down	22	
Message from reader	23	Reader address
Message from LAC	24	Board number
Card control	25	Reader address, card control function.

#### **Configuring outputs**

Beside the signal assignment with door models or with individual assignment, conditions can be defined for outputs which are not allocated yet. If these conditions occur, the output is activated corresponding to the set parameter.

You must decide what will be switched over the output. In contrast to the signals that can be associated to a specific door model, its doors, and readers, in this case the signals of all devices and installations connected to an AMC can be applied.

If, for example, an optic, acoustic signal or a message to an external device is to be triggered by the input signals **Input short circuit tamper** and **Door opened unauthorized**, those input or inputs which can be considered are assigned to the corresponding destination output. Example in which only one contact was selected in each case:

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12	
04		Input short cir	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2	
04	OR	Door opened	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>	

Example with all contacts:

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 02, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 03, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 04, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 05, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 06, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 07, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 08, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	03a, Entrance B:B	REVDOOR, Revolving Door

Example with selected contacts:

A single entry is created for every contact by clicking Mor removing the not required contacts after assigning all contacts:

Exit 🍧	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 03, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 05, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 06, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	03a, Entrance B:B	REVDOOR, Revolving Door

The same conditions can be installed on several outputs if, for example, in addition to an optical you also need an acoustic signal, a message should be sent to the external device at the same time:

Exit 🌎	Operand1	Description	Param11	Param12
04		Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 02, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 03, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 04, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 05, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 06, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 07, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 08, AMC 4-W-2
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
04	OR	Door opened unauthorised	03a, Entrance B:B	REVDOOR, Revolving Door
06		Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 02, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 03, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 04, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 05, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 06, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 07, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 08, AMC 4-W-2
06	OR	Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
07		Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 02, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 03, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 04, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 05, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 06, AMC 4-W-2
07	OR	Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 07, AMC 4-W-2

List of all existing states with the default values for the Parameter11/21 and 12/22:

Description	Param11	Param12
Input activated	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Input normal	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Input short circuit tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Input open tamper	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Input enabled	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Input disabled	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	In, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Output set	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Output reset	00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2	Out, 01, AMC 4-W-2
Door open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
Door closed	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
Door opened unauthorised	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
Door left open	06a, Timemgm	<< !!! >>
Reader shows access granted		TM-Reader IN
Reader shows access denied		TM-Reader IN
Time model active		000, <no model="" time=""></no>
Tamper reader	15112	TM-Reader IN
Tamper AMC		
Tamper I/O board		00, AMC, AMC 4-W-2
Power fail		
Power good		
Host communication ok		
Host communication down		

#### Defining signals on the Terminals tab

The **Terminals** tab lists the contact allocation on an AMC or AMC-EXT. Once entrances are created, signal assignments are indicated according to the door model selected.

You cannot make modifications on the **Terminals** tab of the controller or the extension boards. Edits are only possible on terminals tab of the entrance page. For this reason terminal settings are displayed on a gray background. Entrances which are displayed in red indicate the signal configurations of the respective outputs.

## AMC 4-R4 Inputs Outputs Terminals

Signal allocation of 'AMC 4-R4' with 12 signal pairing

Board	T	entrance	Input signal	entrance	Output signal
AMC 4-R4	01	DM 01a	Door contact	DM 01a	Release door
AMC 4-R4	02				
AMC 4-R4	03				
AMC 4-R4	04				
AMC 4-R4	05				
AMC 4-R4	06				
AMC 4-R4	07				
AMC 4-R4	08				
BPR HI	01				
BPR HI	02				
BPR HI-1	01				
BPR HI-1	02				
•					

## 5.5 Creating and configuring entrances

## 5.5.1 Entrances - background

#### Terminology: Entrance vs Door model

The term Entrance denotes in its entirety the access control mechanism at an entry point: The elements of the entrance include:

- Access readers between 1 and 4
- Some form of barrier, for example a door, turnstile, mantrap or boom-barrier.
- The access procedure as defined by predefined sequences of electronic signals passed between the hardware elements.

A Door model is a template for a particular kind of entrance. It describes the door elements present (number and type of readers, type of door or barrier etc.), and enforces a specific access control process with sequences of predefined signals.

Door models greatly facilitate the configuration of an access control system.

ACE is very likely already to have a door model for your requirements: first choose the type of entrance (door, turnstile, boom, mantrap, elevator, etc.), then the number of readers, and then any peculiarities of the entrance.

The following flowchart helps in the selection of a suitable door model.



After selecting a door model and specifying the reader type the entrance elements are created in the software, along with their default controls. These can be customized later if required.

## 5.5.2 Creating Entrances

#### Selecting a door model:

The following table lists and briefly describes the door models available:

Door model 1	simple or common door
Door model 3	reversible turnstile for entrance and exit
Door model 5 parking lot entrance or exit	
Door model 6	Inbound/Outbound readers for time & attendance
Door model 7	elevator control
Door model 9	vehicle boom barrier and rolling gate
Door model 10	simple door with IDS arming/disarming
Door model 14	simple door with IDS arming/disarming and special access rights
Door model 15	independent input and output signals

#### Important characteristics of door models.

- Door models 1, 3, 5, 9 and 10 include an option for additional card readers on the inbound or outbound side.
- A local access controller that is used within door model 05 (parking lot) or 07 (elevator) cannot be shared with another door model.

 When an entrance has been configured with a door model and saved, the door model can no longer be swapped for another. If a different door model is required the entrance must be deleted and reconfigured from scratch.

#### Variants of individual door models

Some door models have variants (a, b, c, r) with the following characteristics:

а	inbound <b>and</b> outbound readers
b	inbound reader and outbound push button
с	inbound <b>OR</b> outbound reader (not both - which would be variant <b>a</b> )
r	(Door model 1 only). one reader for the sole purpose of registering persons at an assembly point , for example in the case of an evacuation. No physical barrier is involved in this door model.

#### Checks for completeness

The **OK** button to conclude the configuration only becomes active when all mandatory values have been entered. For example, door models of variant (a) require inbound **and** outbound readers. Not until a type is selected for both readers can the entries be saved.

#### Selecting readers for local access controllers:

The list of readers presented for selection will be tailored to the controller type you selected.

- For **AMC 4W** types only Wiegand-readers are available, both with and without keyboard.
- For AMC 4R4 the readers in the following table are available. Do not mix protocols on the same controller.

Reader name	Wiegand- Protocol	BPR- Protocol(*)	I-BPR- Protocol	HADP- Protocol	OSDP- Protocol
WIE1	Х				
WIE1K (Keyboard)	Х				
BPR MF		Х			
BPR MF Keyboard		Х			
BPR LE		Х			
BPR LE Keyboard		Х			
BPR HI		Х			
BPR HI Keyboard		Х			
TA40 LE		Х			
TB15 HI1		Х			
TB30 LE		Х			
INTUS 1600			Х		
I-BPR			Х		
I-BPR K (Keyboard)			Х		
DT 7020			Х		
OSDP					Х

OSDP K (Keyboard)			X
OSDP KD (Keyboard +Display)			Х
HADP		Х	
HADP K (Keyboard)		Х	
HADP KD (Keyboard +Display)		Х	
RKL 55 (Keyboard + LCD)		Х	
RK40 (Keyboard)		Х	
R15		Х	
R30		Х	
R40		Х	
RK40		X	
RKL55		Х	

(\*) BPR-Protocol has been phased out, and is included here for compatibility reasons only.

#### **Creating entrances using OSDP readers**

In case of an **OSDP reader** the dialog appears as follows:



#### Secure communication with OSDP

By default, the **Activate encryption** check box is cleared. Select it if you are using readers with **OSDPv2 secure** support.

If you later deactivate encryption by clearing the check box, reset the reader hardware, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

As an additional security precaution, any attempt to exchange a configured OSDP reader unit with a different OSDP reader unit generates an alarm in the access control system. The operator can acknowledge the alarm in the client, and simultaneously give permission for the exchange.

#### Alarm message: **Exchange of OSDP reader refused** Command: **Allow exchanging the OSDP reader**

The following types of OSDP readers are available:

OSDP	OSDP standard reader
OSDP Keyb	OSDP reader with keyboard
OSDP Keyb+Disp	OSDP reader with keyboard and display

The following OSDP readers have been tested:

OSDPv1 - unsecure mode	LECTUS duo 3000 C - MIFARE classic LECTUS duo 3000 CK - MIFARE classic LECTUS duo 3000 E - MIFARE Desfire EV1 LECTUS duo 3000 EK - MIFARE Desfire EV1
OSDPv2 - unsecure and secure mode	LECTUS secure 2000 RO LECTUS secure 4000 RO LECTUS secure 5000 RO

#### Notice!

Caveats for OSDP

Do not mix product families, e.g. **LECTUS duo** and **LECTUS secure** on the same OSDP bus. A customer specific key is generated and used for encrypted data transmission to the OSDP reader. Ensure that system is properly backed up.

Keep the keys safe. Lost keys cannot be recovered; the reader can only be reset to factory defaults.

For security reasons, do not mix encrypted and unencrypted modes on the same OSDP bus. If you deactivate encryption by clearing the check box on the OSDP tab of the reader in the Device Editor, then reset the reader hardware, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

#### **General door-model parameters**

Entrance name:	DM 01a			
Entrance description:	DM 01a			
Location:	Outside	_		
Destination:	Outside	•		
Division:	Common	*		

Parameter	Possible values	Description
Entrance name	Alphanumeric, between 1 and 16 characters	The dialog generates a unique name for the entrance, but that name can be overwritten by the operator who configures the entrance, if so desired.
Entrance description	alphanumeric: 0 to 255 characters	An arbitrary descriptive text for display in the system.
Location	Any defined area (no parking lots)	The named area (as defined in the system) where the reader is located. This information is used for access sequence control: If a person attempts to use this reader, but the current location of that person (as tracked by the system) is different from that of the reader, then the reader will deny access to the person.
Destination	Any defined area (no parking lots)	The named area, as defined in the system, to which the reader allows access. This information is used for access sequence control: If a person uses this reader their location will be updated to the value of <b>Desintation</b> .
Waiting time external access decision	Number of tenths of a second	The time for which an access controller waits for a decision from an external system or device that is connected to one of its inputs.

Division	The division to which the reader belongs. Default value is <b>Common</b>	Relevant only if the <b>Divisions</b> feature is licensed.
<b>Arming Area</b> (only for entrance model 14)	One letter: A through Z	Entrances of an IDS group will be activated together by the activation of the area's readers.

#### 5.5.3 Additional I/O checks

Additional I/O checks can, for example, help identify a visitor based on Automated Number-Plate Recognition (ANPR ).

The AMC gets 1 input via AMC I/O contact:

Visitor authorized Additional I/O check

The AMC prevents access in the case of a 'not authorized' signal.



The following functions are performed by the AMC:

Card Status	Signal = 1:ANPR authorized	Signal = 0: ANPR not authorized
Card authorized	Access	Invalid vehicle number' event
Card on blacklist	Not authorized - blacklist	Not authorized - blacklist
Card expired	Not authorized - expired	Not authorized - expired
Card not authorized for this reader	Not authorized	Not authorized

It is possible to open the barrier manually even if the visitor is not recognized. For that functionality, a switch is connected to the AMC I/O contacts.

The AMC sets an output signal **Additional check active** before the input signal is analyzed. If the vehicle owner and the license plate are as yet unknown to the access control system, the operator must record them now.

## 5.5.4 Terminals

#### Configuring Terminals

In its contents and structure, this tab is identical to the AMC Terminals tab.

DM 01b Terminals

Signal allocation of 'AMC 4-R4' with 8 signal pairing

В	T	entrance	Input signal	entrance	Output signal
0	01	DM 01a	Door contact	DM 01a	Release door
0	02	DM 01b	Door contact	DM 01b	Release door
0	03	DM 01b	"Request to exit"	P.	
0	04			P.	
0	05			P.	
0	06			P.	
0	07				
0	08			С.	

Here, however, it is possible to make changes to the signal assignment for selected entrance model. Double-clicking in the columns **Output signal** or **Input signal** opens up combo-boxes.

#### DM 01b Terminals

Signal allocation of 'AMC 4-R4' with 8 signal pairing

В	T	entrance	Input signal	entrance	Output signal
0	01	DM 01a	Door contact	DM 01a	Release door
0	02	DM 01b	Door contact	DM 01b	Release door
0	03	DM 016	"Request to exit" 🔻		
0	04		( not assigned )	·	
0	05		"Request to exit" bu	utton	
0	06		Bolt sensor		
0	07		Passage locked		
0	08		Sabotage		

Similarly it is possible to create additional signals for the respective entrance. Double-clicking in an empty line brings up the appropriate combo-box:

DM 01b Terminals

Signal allocation of 'AMC 4-R4' with 8 signal pairing

В	T	entrance	Input signal	entrance	Output signal
0	01	DM 01a	Door contact	DM 01a	Release door
0	02	DM 016	Door contact	DM 01b	Release door
0	03	DM 016	"Request to exit"		
0	04	DM 016	Bolt sensor		
0	05				
0	06			1	
0	07				
0	08				

Signal assignments which are inappropriate for the entrance that you are editing are read-only, with a gray background. These can only be edited while the corresponding entrance is selected.

A similar gray background and pale foreground color is given to those outputs which were parameterized in the **Outputs** tab of the AMC.

## i

#### Notice!

The combo-boxes are not 100% context-sensitive, therefore it is possible to select signals that will not work in real life. If you add or remove signals on the **Terminals** tab, test them to ensure that they are logically and physically compatible with the entrance.

#### **Terminal Assignment**

For each AMC and each entrance a **Terminal** tab lists all 8 signals for the AMC on 8 separate lines. Unused signals are marked white, and used ones are marked blue. The list has the following structure:

- **Board**: numbering of the AMC Wiegand Extension (0) or the I/O extension board (1 to 3)
- **Terminal**: number of the contact on the AMC (01 up to 08) or the Wiegand extension board (09 to 16).
- Entrance: name of the entrance
- **Output signal**: name of the output signal
- Entrance: name of the entrance
- Input signal: name of the input signal

loard	T	entrance	Input signal	entrance	Output signal	
MC 4-R4	01	DM 01a	Door contact	DM 01a	Release door	
MC 4-R4	02					1
MC 4-R4	03					1
MC 4-R4	04					1
MC 4-R4	05	1				1
MC 4-R4	06	1				1
MC 4-R4	07	1				1
MC 4-R4	08					1
PR HI	01					1
PR HI	02					1
PR HI-1	01					1
PB HI-1	02					1

#### Changing the signal assignment

On the terminal tabs of the controllers the assignment of the separate signals is only displayed (read-only). On the terminal tabs of the respective entrances, however, it is possible to change or reposition the signals of the selected entrances.

A double-click on the entry to be changed in the column **Output signal** or **Input signal** activates a drop-down list, so that a different value can be selected as the signal for the entrance model. If you select **Not assigned**, the signal is released and can be used for other entrances.

Thus you can not only change signals, but also assign signals to other contacts in order to optimize the use of the available voltage. Any free or freed contacts can be used later for new signals or as new positions for existing signals.



#### Notice!

In principle all input and output signals can be freely selected, but not all selections make sense for all door models. For example it would make no sense to assign IDS signals to a door model (e.g. 01 or 03) which does not support IDS. For more details see the table in section Assigning Signals to the Door Models.

#### Assigning signals to door models

In order to avoid incorrect parameterization the pull-down menus for assigning signals to doors models, the menus offer only those signals which are compatible with the selected door model.

The following signals are available for inputs and outputs:

#### Table of input signals

Input Signals	Description
Door sensor	
Request to exit button	Button to open the door.
Bolt sensor	Is used for messages, only. There is no control function.
Entrance locked	Is used to lock the opposite door in sluices temporarily. But can also be used for permanently locking.
Sabotage	Sabotage signal of an external controller.
Turnstile in normal position	Turnstile is closed.
Passage completed	A passage was completed successfully. This is a pulse of an external controller.
IDS: ready to arm	Will be set by the IDS, if all detectors are in rest and the IDS can be armed.
IDS: is armed	The IDS is armed.
IDS: request to arm button	Button to arm the IDS.
Local open enable	Will be used if a doorway arrangement opens the door without involving the AMC. The AMC sends no intrusion message but "door local open".
External access decision accepted	Signal is set, if an external system accepts access
External access decision denied	Signal is set, if an external system denies access

#### Table of output signals

Output Signals	Description
Door opener	
Sluice: lock opposite direction	Locks the other side of the mantrap. This signal is sent when the door opens.
Alarm suppression	to the IDS. Is set as long as the door is open, to avoid that the IDS creates an intrusion message.
Indicator green	Indicator lamp - will be controlled as long as the door is open.
Door open too long	Pulse of three seconds. If the door is open too long.
Camera activation	Camera will be activated at the beginning of a passage.

Open turnstile inbound	
Open turnstile outbound	
Door is permanent open	Signal to unlock a door for an extended period.
IDS: arm	Signal to arm the IDS .
IDS: disarm	Signal to disarm the IDS .
External access decision activated	Signal must be set to activate external access system

## Mapping table of door models to input and output signals

The following table lists meaningful assignments of signals and door models.

Door Model	Description	Input Signals	Output Signals
01	Simple door with entry and exit reader Readers for time & attendance External access decision available	<ul> <li>Door sensor</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>Bolt sensor</li> <li>Entrance locked</li> <li>Sabotage</li> <li>Local open enable</li> <li>External access decision accepted</li> <li>External access decision denieded</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Door opener</li> <li>Sluice: lock opposite direction</li> <li>Alarm suppression</li> <li>Indicator green</li> <li>Camera activation</li> <li>Door open too long</li> <li>External access decision activated</li> </ul>
03	Revolving door with entry and exit reader Readers for time & attendance External access decision available	<ul> <li>Turnstile in rest position</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>Entrance locked</li> <li>Sabotage</li> <li>External access decision accepted</li> <li>External access decision denieded</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Sluice: lock opposite direction</li> <li>Open turnstile inbound</li> <li>Open turnstile outbound</li> <li>Alarm suppression</li> <li>Camera activation</li> <li>Door open too long</li> <li>External access decision activated</li> </ul>
05	Parking lot entrance or exit - maximum of 24 parking zones Readers for time & attendance External access decision available	<ul> <li>Door sensor</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>Entrance locked</li> <li>Passage completed</li> <li>External access decision</li> <li>accepted</li> <li>External access decision</li> <li>denieded</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Door opener</li> <li>Alarm suppression</li> <li>Indicator green</li> <li>Door open too long</li> <li>Door is permanent open</li> <li>External access decision activated</li> </ul>
06	Readers for time & attendance		
07	Elevator - maximum 56 floors		
09	Vehicle entrance or outgoing reader and push button Readers for time & attendance External access decision available	<ul> <li>Door sensor</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>Entrance locked</li> <li>Passage completed</li> <li>External access decision accepted</li> <li>External access decision denieded</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Door opener</li> <li>Alarm suppression</li> <li>Indicator green</li> <li>Door open too long</li> <li>Door is permanent open</li> <li>External access decision activated</li> </ul>
----	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10	Simple door with entry and exit reader and IDS arming/disarming Readers for time & attendance External access decision available	<ul> <li>Door sensor</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>IDS: ready to arm</li> <li>IDS: is armed</li> <li>Sabotage</li> <li>IDS: request to arm</li> <li>External access decision accepted</li> <li>External access decision denieded</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Door opener</li> <li>Camera activation</li> <li>IDS: arm</li> <li>IDS: disarm</li> <li>Door open too long</li> <li>External access decision activated</li> </ul>
14	Simple door with entry and exit reader and IDS arming/disarming Readers for time & attendance	<ul> <li>Door sensor</li> <li>"Request to exit" button</li> <li>IDS: ready to arm</li> <li>IDS: is armed</li> <li>Sabotage</li> <li>IDS: request to arm</li> </ul>	- Door opener - Camera activation - IDS: arm - Door open too long
15	Digital contacts		

#### Assigning signals to readers

Serial readers (i.e. readers on an AMC2 4R4) and OSDP readers can be enhanced with local I/ O signals. In this way additional signals can be made available and electrical paths to the door contacts shortened.

When a serial reader is created the **Terminals** tab of the corresponding entrance shows two input and two output signals for each reader below the controller and (if present) the extension board signals.

(i)

#### Notice!

These list entries are created for each serial reader regardless of whether or not it has local I/ Os.

These reader-local signals can not be assigned to functions and parametrized like those of controllers and boards. They also do not appear on the **Input signal** and **Output signal** tabs, nor can they be used for elevators (e.g. to exceed the 56-floor limit). For this reason they are best suited for direct control of doors (e.g. door strike or release). This does however free up the controller's signals for more complex parametrized functions.

#### Editing the signals

When an entrance is created the **Terminals** tab of the corresponding entrance shows two input and two output signals for each reader below the controller. The Board column displays the name of the reader. The standard signals for the entrance are assigned by default to the

first free signals on the controller. In order to move these to the reader's own signals they first have to be deleted from their original positions. To do this select the list entry **<Not assigned>** 

Double-click in the **Input signal** or **Output signal** column of the reader to see a list of possible signals for the chosen door model, and so reposition the signal. Like all signals these can be viewed on the **Terminals** tab of the controller, but not edited there.



#### Notice!

The status of reader signals can not be monitored. They can only be used for the door to which the reader belongs.

# 5.5.5 Predefined Entrance Model Signals

#### Entrance Model 01



Model variants:

01a	Normal door with entry <b>and</b> exit reader
01b	Normal door with entry reader and push button
01c	Normal door with entry <b>or</b> exit reader

#### Possible signals:

Input signals	Output signals
Door sensor	Door opener
"Request to exit" button	Sluice: lock opposite direction
Sabotage	Indicator green
Local open enable	Camera activation
	Door open too long



#### Notice!

Singling function, especially the lock of the opposite, can be parameterized with DM 03, only.

Alarm suppression is only activated when the alarm suppression time before door opening is greater than 0.

This entrance model can also be advantageous for vehicle entrances, in which case a secondary reader for trucks and cars is also recommended.

#### Entrance Model 03



#### Model variants:

03a	Reversible turnstile with entry <b>and</b> exit reader
03b	Reversible turnstile with entry reader and push button
03c	Turnstile with entry <b>or</b> exit reader

#### Possible signals:

Input signal	Output signals
Turnstile in normal position	Open turnstile inbound
"Request to exit" button	Open turnstile outbound
Sabotage	Entrance locked
	Camera activation
	Door open too long
Additional signals	using <b>mantrap</b> option:
Entrance locked	Sluice: lock opposite direction
	Alarm suppression

Configuration notes for mantraps:

When the turnstile is in normal position the first input signal of all connected readers is switched on. If a card is presented and if the owner has access rights for this entrance, then :

- If at the entrance reader the first output signal is set at the entrance reader for the duration of the activation time.
- If at the exit reader the second output signal is set at the exit reader for the duration of the activation time.

When the Request to Exit (REX) button is pressed then the second input signal and second output signal are set. During this time the revolving door can be used in the enabled direction.

#### **Entrance Model 05c**



Model variant:

#### 05c

Parking-lot access entrance or exit reader

Possible signals for this entrance model:

Input signals	Output signals
Door sensor	Door opener
"Request to exit" button	Door is permanent open
Entrance locked	Indicator green
Passage completed	Alarm suppression
	Door open too long

Both the entrance and the exit of the parking lot must be configured on the same controller. If parking lot access has been assigned to a controller, then that controller can govern no other door models. For the entrance to the parking lot only an entrance reader (no exit reader) can be assigned. Once the entry has been assigned then selecting the door model again permits you only to define the exit reader. You can define up to 24 subareas to every parking lot, of which one must be contained in the card's authorizations in order for the card to work.

#### Entrance Model 06



Model variants

06a	Entry <b>and</b> exit reader for time & attendance
06c	Entry <b>or</b> exit Reader for time & attendance

Readers which are created with this door model do not control doors or barriers, but only forward card data to a time & attendance system. These readers are usually situated in places to which access has already been controlled. Therefore no signals are defined.

$\frown$	Notice!
(i)	In order that valid
U	attendance system
	one for inbound cl

booking pairs (entry time plus exit time) can be created in the time & n, it is necessary to parameterize two separate readers with door model 06: ocking and one for outbound

Use variant **a** when entrance and exit are not separate. Use variant **c** if the entrance and the exit are spatially separate, or if you cannot attach the readers to the same controller. Make sure that you define one of the readers as inbound reader and one as outbound reader. As with any entrance it is necessary to create and assign authorizations. The **Time** Management tab in the dialogs Access Authorizations and Area/Time Authorizations lists all time & attendance readers which have been defined. Activate at least one reader in the inbound direction, and one reader in the outbound direction. Authorizations for time & attendance readers can be assigned along with other access authorizations, or as separate authorizations.

If more than one time & attendance reader exists for a given direction, then it is possible to assign certain cardholders to certain readers. Only the attendance times of assigned and authorized users will be registered and stored by the reader.



#### Notice!

Other access control features also affect the behavior of time & attendance readers. Hence blacklists, time models or expiry dates can also prevent a time & attendance reader from registering access times.

The registered entry and exit times are stored in a text file in the directory:

<SW\_installation\_folder>\AccessEngine\AC\TAExchange\

under the name *TAccExc\_EXP.tx*t and held pending export to a time & attendance system. The booking data are transmitted in the following format:

ddMMyyyy;hhmm[s];Direction [0,1]; AbsenceReason; Personnel-Nr.

d=day, M=month, y=year, h=hour, m=minute, s=summertime (daylight saving), 0=outbound, 1=inbound

The export file contains all bookings in chronological order. The field separator within the file is a semicolon.

#### **Entrance Model 07 variants**



Model variants:

07a	Elevator with max. 56 floors
07c	Elevator with max. 56 floors and time model

# Entrance Model 07a

#### Signals:

Input signal	Output signals
	Release <name floor="" of="" the=""></name>
	One output signal per defined floor, with a maximum of 56.

Upon summoning the elevator the card owner can select only those floors for which his card is authorized.

The elevator door models can not be mixed with other door models on the same controller. Using extension boards up to 56 floors can be defined for each elevator on an AMC. The card's authorizations must contain the elevator itself and at least one floor.

#### Entrance Model 07c Signals:

# Input Signal Output Signal Input key <name of the floor> Release <name of the floor> For each defined floor an output and input entry exists - up to 56.

Bosch Security Systems

Upon summoning the elevator and pressing a floor selector button (hence the need for input signals) the card's authorizations are checked to see whether they include the chosen floor. Moreover with this door model it is possible to define any floors served as **public access**, i.e. no authorization check will be performed for this floor, and any person may take the lift to it. Nevertheless public access may itself be governed by a **time model** which limits it to certain hours of certain days. Outside of these hours authorization checks will be performed as usual. The elevator door models can not be mixed with other door models on the same controller. Using extension boards up to 56 floors can be defined for each elevator on an AMC. The card's authorizations must contain the elevator itself and at least one floor.

#### Entrance Model 09



Possible signals:

Input signals	Output signals
Door sensor	Door opener
"Request to exit" button	Door is open long-term
Entrance locked	Traffic light is green
Passage completed	Alarm suppression
	Door open too long

For the barrier control, an underlying control (SPS) is assumed. In contrast to **door model 5c**, you can configure this entrance and exit on different AMCs. Moreover there are no subareas, but only a general authorization for the parking area.

#### Entrance Model 10



#### Model variants:

10a	Normal door with entry <b>and</b> exit reader <b>and</b> IDS (intrusion detection system) arming/disarming
10b	Normal door with entry, REX (request for exit) button and IDS arming/disarming
10e	Normal door with entry, REX button and decentral IDS arming/disarming

#### Possible signals:

Input signals	Output signals
Door sensor	Door opener

IDS: is armed	IDS: arm			
IDS: ready to arm	IDS: disarm [only DM 10e]			
"Request to exit" button	Camera activation			
Bolt sensor	Door open too long			
Sabotage				
IDS: request to arm button				

i

#### Notice!

This door model requires keypad readers. Cardholders require **PIN codes** to arm/disarm the IDS.

Different procedures are required depending on which readers are installed.

#### **Serial readers** (including I-BPR, HADP and OSDP)

Arm by pressing key **7** and confirming with Enter (#). Then present the card, enter the PIN code and again confirm with the Enter (#) key.

Disarm by presenting the card, entering the PIN code, and confirming with Enter (#).

#### Wiegand readers (including serial BPR protocol)

Arm by pressing 7, presenting the card and entering the PIN code. There is no need to confirm using the Enter key.

Disarm by presenting the card and entering the PIN code. Disarming and door-release occur simultaneously.

#### Special features of DM 10e:

Whereas with door models 10a and 10b every entrance is its own security area, with 10e multiple entrances can be grouped into units. Any one reader in this group is capable of arming or disarming the whole unit. An output signal **Disarm IDS** is required to reset the status set by any of the readers in the group.

Signals:

- Door models 10a and 10b:
  - - Arming is triggered by a steady signal
  - - Disarming is triggered by the discontinuation of the steady signal.
- Door model 10e:

- Arming and disarming are triggered by a signal pulse of 1 second's duration.
 [Using a bistable relay it is possible to control the IDS from multiple doors. In order to do this the signals of all doors require an OR operation at the relay. The signals **IDS armed** and **IDS ready to arm** must be replicated at all participating doors.]

#### Entrance Model 14



#### Model variants:

14a	Normal door with entry and exit reader and IDS arming / disarming
14b	Normal door with entry, push button and IDS arming / disarming

#### Possible signals:

Input signals	Output signals				
Door sensor	Door opener				
IDS: is armed	IDS: arm				
IDS: ready to arm	Camera activation				
"Request to exit" button	Door open too long				
Bolt sensor					
Sabotage					
IDS: request to arm button					

With door model 14 it is possible to group entrances of model 14 into **Arming areas**. The effect is that the door controller treats the entrances as belonging to the same physical area, as defined in the intrusion system.

In contrast to model 10 door model 14 can use readers with or without keypads. Another difference is the assignment of arming/disarming authorizations. Only card owners with the proper authorizations can arm/disarm.

In the case of keyboard readers, arming and disarming is performed as with door model 10. In the case of non-keyboard readers, arming is not achieved by entering the PIN code, but by using a switch near the reader which has the same function as key 7 of the keypad readers. After using this switch, the status of the alarm device is displayed by the reader's colored LEDs:

- Disarmed = alternating green and red light
- Armed = constant red light

Arm by presenting a properly authorized card.

Disarm by using the switch and presenting a properly authorized card.

Door-release is not automatic upon disarming, but requires the card to be presented again.

#### **Entrance Model 15**

Possible signals: These default names can be overwritten.

Input Signal	Output Signal
DIP	DOP
DIP-1	DOP-1
DIP-63	DOP-63

Unlike other door models, entrance model 15 manages those inputs and outputs of a controller which are still free, and places them as generic inputs and voltage-free outputs at the disposal of the whole system.

Unlike the output contacts of other door models, those of entrance model 15 can be individually browsed in the device editor.

A checkbox **Keep state** in the screen for **Device type assignment** allows the user to save the input and output (DIP and DOP) signal statuses if the AMC, MAC or superordinate systems have to be restarted.

Device data Device type assignment		
+ ×   "א נ <i>ז</i> ק		
B MAS     B MAC     C MAC 4-W     COR AMC_10084W_001_0     -COR AMC_1016_001_1     -COR AMC_1016_001_2     -COR AMC_1016_001_3	DOP Name: DOP-1	
G → B DIP/DOP 15 → DOP → DOP-1 → DOP-2 → DOP-3 → DOP-5 → DOP-5 → DOP-5 → DOP-5 → DOP-6 → DOP-7 → DOP-8 → DOP-9	Board number: 0 Stanat number: 7 Keep state: 7 Division: Common	

- Activate the checkbox to save the latest signal statuses (0 or 1) in case of a restart.
- Deactivate the checkbox to allow resetting to default values in case of a restart.

#### **Reinstating DOPs after restarts**

When a MAC or AMC is restarted, it normally resets the state values of its subordinate DOPs to the default value 0 (zero).

To ensure a restart always resets a DOP to last state that was manually assigned to it, select the DOP in the device tree, and select the check box **Keep state** in the main window.

#### 5.5.6 Special door models

#### 5.5.6.1 Elevators

#### General notes on Elevators (Entrance Model 07)

Elevators cannot be combined with other door models on the same AMC controller. Elevators cannot be used with the reader options **Group access** or **Attendant required** Up to 8 floors can be defined on one AMC. An AMC extension board offers 8 or 16 additional outputs per extension board.

Hence, using the maximum number of the largest extension boards it is possible to configure up to 56 floors with RS485 readers, and 64 floors with Wiegand readers, if a special Wiegand extension board is used in addition.

#### Differences between entrance models 07a and 07c

In the access authorization dialogs you can assign specific floors to the authorization of a person.

If the elevator was created using the entrance model **07a** a cardholder presents their ID card and the floors for which they have permission for become available.

With the entrance model **07c** the system checks the authorization for the selected floor after the person has chosen it. The marked floors **public** are available for each person regardless of authorization. Together with a time model the public function can be restricted to the specified time model. Outside this period the authorization will be checked for the selected floor.

#### Wiring scheme for elevators:



The following picture shows the connection scheme of an elevator using door model 07a.

#### Legend:

- A = Key board of the elevator
- B = (solid line) AMC-Output signals
- C = (broken line) Connection to the elevator controls
- D = up to three I/O-Boards can be connected to an AMC, if its own eight inputs and outputs are not sufficient.
- E = Data and Power supply from the AMC to the I/O-Boards
- F = The elevator's floor selector
- G = Reader. Two readers are configurable for each elevator.

The following picture shows the connection scheme of an elevator using door model 07c.



#### Legend:

- B = (solid line) AMC-Output signals
- C = (broken line) Connection to the elevator controls
- D = up to three I/O-Boards can be connected to an AMC, if its own eight inputs and outputs are not sufficient.
- E = Data and Power supply from the AMC to the I/O-Boards
- F = The elevator's floor selector
- G = Reader. Two readers are configurable for each elevator.

Like parking lots, elevators have the parameter **Public.** This parameter can be set for each floor individually. If the parameter **Public** is activated access authorizations are not checked - so, any cardholder in the elevator can select the floor.

If desired, set a time model for the entrance model: Outside the defined time zones authorizations will be checked.

#### Floors for entrance model 07

Use the **Floors** tab to add and remove floors for the elevator, using the **Add** and **Remove** buttons.

levator 07a	Floors	Terminals			
	Ava	ilable exits / floors	4/4		
0.10	Lu.	[n 14	h a c		
GrpID	Name	Description	target location	Division	Add
GrpID 65	Name Floor	Description	target location Outside	Division Common	Add
GrpID 65 66	Name Floor Floor-1	Description	target location Outside Outside	Division Common Common	Add
GrpID 65 66 67	Name Floor Floor-1 Floor-2	Description	target location Outside Outside Outside	Division Common Common Common	Add Remove

Target locations for a floor can be any **Areas** except parking lots and parking zones.

Only one Area can be assigned to an individual floor. The choice of areas offered in the comboboxes is therefore reduced after each assignment, thus preventing unintentional doubleassignments.

Elevator 07a	Floors   1 Avai	erminals	: 4/4							
GrpID	Name	Description	target location	Division	 			Add		
65 66 67 69	Floor Floor-1 Floor-2 Floor-3		Outside Building B - fitness of Building C - extensio	Common			1	Remove	_	
	110010		Building C - extensio Building C - extensio Building C - manage Building C - managi Building C - secreta Outside	on - 1. floor on - 2.floor ement ng board	levator U/a	Avai	erminais   lable exits / floors:	4/4		
					GrpID	Name	Description	target location		Division
					65	Floor		Building C - extension - 1. floor		Common
					66	Floor-1		Building C - extension - 2.floor	_	Common
					67	Floor-2		Outside	•	Common
					68	Floor-3		Building B - kitchen Building B - server room Building B - fitness center Building C - extension Building C - management Building C - secretary Dutside		Lommon

When using entrance model 07a it is possible to make individual floors publicly accessible by checking the **Public access** box. In this case no checking of authorizations takes place. The additional assignment of a **Time model** would nevertheless restrict access to pre-defined periods.

	Ava	ilable exits / floor	s: 4/4				
GrpID	Name	Description	target location	public access	Time model	Div	Add
CE	Floor-4		Building B - staff restaurant	<b>V</b>	TM-elevator	Cor	
00	EL E	1	Building B - kitchen		<no modell="" time=""></no>	Coi	Remove
66	Floor-5			=		0	
66 67	Floor-5 Floor-6		Building B - server room		<no modell="" time=""></no>	LOI	

On the **Elevator** tab above the upper list box in the dialogs **Access authorizations** and **Area/ time authorizations** select first the required elevator and then, below, the floors to which the cardholder is permitted access.

« Main menu	12 🖬 🖊	N ( 🖓 🖓	н   🔶 🗙	1	Division:	New division 2	2	•					
	Aut	horization name:					_						
											_		
Access		Description:											
	Entrance	Time management	Elevator Parking lo	t Arming									
3	Elevators:												
Area/time authorizations	Name		Description	9	itate	Division						_	
	Elevator I												
1	Elevator	07c	Elevator 07c			Common							
Access profiles													
	1												
	Floors:												
Areas	Name	Description	From	То			State						
2	Floor		Building C - extension	Building	C - exten	sion - 1. floor	<b>V</b>						
$\sim$	Floor-1		Building C - extension	Building	C - exten	sion - 2.floor	<b>V</b>						
Reset areas	Floor-2		Building C - extension	Building	C - mana	ging board							
unknown	Floor-3		Building C - extension	Building	C - secrel	tary	-						

5.5.6.2

#### Entrance model 14: Arming and disarming an intrusion detection system

#### Introduction

In contrast to entrance model 10 (DM10), **DM14** can arm and disarm an intruder alarm system, or IDS for a particular Arming area . A DM14 entrance can also be configured to grant access to the cardholder who disarms from it, provided the cardholder has all other access permissions required.

The configuration procedure for DM14 in the device editor and dialog manager includes these tasks:

- 1. Set general parameters to identify the entrance and its arming area.
- 2. Set specific parameters to set the exact procedure for disarming the area.
- 3. Define IDS-specific input and output signals on the terminals of the entrance's door controller.
- 4. Include arming/disarming permissions in the access authorizations of those cardholders that are to operate DM 14 entrances.

The tasks are described in the following sections.

#### **General parameters**

On the first tab, DM14a or DM14b, set the following parameters.

🔦 DevEdit - [System configuration] File Edit View Windows ? + X | M ◀ ▷ N 幅 🖾 것 ㅋ 🗖 멾 🕀 역 DMS DM 14a Alarm system Terminals Name : DM 14a-1 🗄 📲 DM 14a-1\* Description: DM 14a Location: Outside Destination: Outside Waiting time external access decision: 0 1/10 sec. Division: Common Arming area: д 🗸

Parameter	Value type	Description
Name	Free text	The name of the entrance.
Description	Free text, optional	A description of the entrance.
Location	List of defined areas, if used	The access area where the entrance is located.

Parameter	Value type	Description
Destination	List of defined areas, if used	The access area to which the entrance leads.
Division	List of defined divisions , if used	The Division or tenant within the access control system to which the entrance belongs.
Waiting time external access decision	Tenths of seconds	If you have connected an external system to the terminals of the AMC, to make access decisions on its behalf, then this parameter limits the time to wait for a response from the external system. Note: the access decision requires the fulfilment of <b>all</b> conditions defined in the access control system, for example, access authorizations, time models and Divisions (if used). The default value is 0, that is, the parameter is ignored.
Arming area	List of capital letters AZ	A letter by which to group DM14 entrances into Arming areas .

#### Alarm-system parameters

On the second tab, **Alarm system**, set the following parameters. These parameters govern the credentials and the procedure for disarming the IDS, and the disarming affects all entrances within the same arming area, as defined on the first tab.

M 14b	Alarm system	Terminals		
- Autho Nam auth Dese	orizations ne of disarming norization: cription:	Unscharf-2	Name of the arming authorization: Description:	Scharf-2
Disarı O E	ming By card alone With card and ke O Confirma O By PIN co O By confir	eypad tion key + PIN code ode a mation key aloi	Procedure With card and keypad 1. Press confirmation key '7'. 2. Press confirmation key 'Ente 3. Present the card. 4. Enter PIN code. 5. Press confirmation key 'Ente 6. The alarm system is disarme 7. The door is cycled automatic	er' or #. er' or #. ed. cally.
	Automatic doo	r cyde: 🗹	Confirmation can also be given switch).	n by an input signal (e.g. from a key
Armin	ig and disarming			
	Out	out signal with a 1 sec pulse:		

Parameter	Value type	Description
	I	Authorizations pane
Name of disarming authorization	Free text	A name to appear in protocols and reports when a cardholder disarms the IDS at this entrance.
Name of arming authorization	Free text	A name to appear in protocols and reports when a cardholder arms the IDS at this entrance.
<b>Description</b> (one for each authorization )	Free text, optional	Descriptions of the arming authorizations
		Disarming pane
By card alone	Radio button	Select this option to allow the IDS to be disarmed by presenting a card to the reader, without further authentication.
By card and keypad	Radio button	Select this option to allow the IDS to be disarmed by presenting a card to the reader and giving further authentication via the reader's keypad. The exact authentication and disarming procedure is determined by the following sub-parameters:
Confirmation key + PIN code	Radio button	Cardholders must authenticate themselves using a card, a confirmation key and a PIN code.
By PIN code alone	Radio button	Cardholders must authenticate themselves using a card and a PIN code.
By confirmation key alone	Radio button	Cardholders must authenticate themselves using a card and a confirmation key.
Automatic door cycle	Check box	Select this check box if you want to cycle the door lock upon disarming, to allow the cardholder to disarm and enter simultaneously. <b>Note:</b> the lock will only be cycled if the cardholder also has access permission for this door.
	1	Procedure pane
Depending on procedure for be using the D	the parame disarming th M14 entran	ters set in the <b>Disarming</b> pane, this pane shows a standard ne IDS. Communicate this procedure to the cardholders who will ces in this Arming area.
		Arming and disarming pane
Output signal with a 1 sec pulse	Check box	Select this check box if you are using a <b>Bosch B or G-Series</b> intrusion panel. The effect is to send a single pulse signal to toggle the arming state of the entrance's intrusion area, rather than to set the signal to a constant 1 (arm) or 0 (disarm).

#### **Door controller terminals**

In order make arming and disarming possible with a DM14 entrance, you must define the IDS input and the output signals that you wish to use on the terminals of the entrance's door controller.

This step is required once for each controller that has DM14 entrances. All subsequent DM14 entrances that you define on the same controller and its extension boards will inherit the signals from the shared controller.

The default signals are described in the following table.

Signal	In/	Description
	Out	
IDS armed	In	The IDS is armed for this intrusion area.
IDS ready to ar In I		No IDS points are in a faulted (open or unready) state.
m		
Arm IDS	In	A request to arm the IDS.
Release door	Out	Cycle the door's mechanism to unlocked and back to locked, to allow access.
Arming IDS	Out	Arm or disarm the IDS, depending on its current state (toggle).

#### Procedure to assign signals to terminals

- 1. Open the 3rd tab, **Terminals**.
- The terminals of the door controller of this entrance, plus any extension boards that it may have, are displayed in a table.

er D	evEdit	- [Syste	m configura	ation]	
File	Edit	View	Windows	?	

$+$ $\times$ $ $ $\bowtie$ $\triangleleft$ $\triangleright$ $\bowtie$ $\mathbb{E}$ $ $ $\square$ $ $ $\sub$	) 의 🗖 묦 🕀	Q					
■ ■ DMS	DM 14a Alarm sy	stem T	erminals				
⊟	Signal allocation of	Signal allocation of 'AMC 4-W-1' with 8 signal pairing					
	Board	T	Entrance	Input signal	Entrance	Output signal	
Door-1^	AMC 4-W-1	01	DM 14a-1	Door contact	DM 14a-1	Release door	
WIE1K Reader-1*	AMC 4-W-1	02	DM 14a-1	IDS armed	DM 14a-1	Arming IDS	
WIE1K Reader-2*	AMC 4-W-1	03	DM 14a-1	IDS ready to arm			
	AMC 4-W-1	04	DM 14a-1	Arm IDS			
	AMC 4-W-1	05					
	AMC 4-W-1	06					
	AMC 4-W-1	07					
	AMC 4-W-1	08					
	AMC 4-W-1	08					

- 2. Select the line corresponding to the terminal that you want to use for the input signal.
- 3. In the corresponding cell, in the **Input signal** column, select the desired signal from the drop down list. Note that only hitherto unassigned signals appear in the list.
- 4. Repeat the previous steps to add any other input signals that you require for this entrance.
- 5. Repeat the procedure as often as necessary to add to the column **Output signal** any output signals that you require.

#### Defining authorizations to arm and disarm DM14 entrances

After you have created a DM14 entrance in the device editor, the entrance will be available for inclusion in access authorizations.

- 1. In the dialog manager, navigate to:
- Main menu > System data > Authorizations > tab: Arming Intrusion detection
- 2. Load an existing access authorization into the dialog, or click └ⓓ (New) to create a new one.
- Locate the desired DM14 entrance in the list, and select the check boxes Armed and/or Disarmed.

		944	≣_ ► ► <	? 🗇	Division:	Common	•
« Main menu	Authorization	name: TestAuth		MAC	MAC MAC-1 Comm	non	-
Authorizations	Deso	Description: Time model: TM_0630_1530 : 630 1530 : Common 🗸					
Access profiles	Inactivity limit: (No entry)						
Areas	Entrance   Time man	nagement   Elevator   OT	IS elevator Parking lot Arm	ng intrusion detection Pega	ys		
Depat areas	Name	Description	From	То	Armed	Disarmed	Division
unknown	DM 14a-1	DM 14a	Outside of the system	Outside of the system	~		Common
	< Main menu Authorizations Access profiles Areas Reset areas unknown	Main menu Authorization Authorization Access profiles Access profiles Entrance Time main Reset areas unknown	« Main menu     Authorization name: TestAuth       Authorizations     Description: [       Authorizations     Time model: TM_0630_1530       Access profiles     Inactivity limit: (No entry)       Areas     Entrance Time management   Elevator   OT       Reset areas unknown     DM 14a-1	Authorization name:     TestAuth       Authorizations     Description:       Time model:     TM_0630_1530 : 630 1530 : Common       Access profiles     Inactivity limit:       Areas     Entrance       Time management     Elevator       OTIS elevator     Parking lot       Arma     Description       Mame     Description       DM 14a-1     DM 14a	« Main menu     Authorization name:     TestAuth     MAC:       Authorizations     Description:	« Main menu     Authorization name: TestAuth     MAC: MACMAC-1 Comm       Authorizations     Description:	« Main menu     Authorization name:     TestAuth     MAC:     MAC MAC-1 Common       Authorizations     Description:

5. Assign this access authorization to those cardholders that are to operate DM 14 entrances.

#### 5.5.6.3 DIPs and DOPs - DM 15

#### **Creating Entrance Model 15:**

This entrance model offers independent input and output signals.

New entrance		×
Settings		
Entrance mode	el: DIP/DOP 15: Digital contacts, up to 56 in- and 56 outputs 🗸 🗸	
Ma	ax. number outputs/auhorizations: 2/0	
	Number of DIPs (inputs) of 0:	
	Number of DOPs (outputs) of 2: 0 🔹	
	K <u>C</u> ancel	
Me	ax. number outputs/autonizations: 2/0 Number of DIPs (nuputs) of 0: 0 = Number of DDPs (outputs) of 2: 0 = DK	

If all reader interfaces are taken only this entrance model becomes available. You can define this entrance model as long as there are at least two signals free.

To AMCs with elevators (model 07) or parking lots (model 05c) it is not possible to assign this entrance model.

#### 5.5.6.4 Mantrap door models

#### **Creating a Mantrap**

Entrance models 01 and 03 can be used as "mantraps" for the singling of cardholder accesses. Use the check box **Mantrap option** to make the necessary additional signals available.

New entrance			
Settings Entrance model: Max.	DM 01a: Common door with entry and exit n number outputs/auhorizations: 870	reader 🗾 💆	]

You can combine all model types 01 and 03, but set this option on both entrances belonging to the mantrap.

Along with the usual signal assignments for the door model, the mantrap option requires additional signal assignments of its own.

#### Example: mantrap on one controller

Turnstiles are the most common means of singling access by cardholders. In the following examples we have therefore used door model 3a (turnstile with entry and exit reader). Mantrap configuration with two turnstiles (DM 03a):



Connections to the door locks for the opposite direction ensure that only one of the turnstiles can be opened at any one time.



#### Notice!

The output signals (Out) 3 and 7 are to be set potential free (dry mode) The signal "door lock of opposite direction" is active on the 0. It is to be used for outputs 3 and 7 "normally closed".

#### Example: mantrap on two controllers

Mantrap configuration with two turnstiles (DM 03a) which are distributed across two controllers:



Connections to the door locks for the opposite direction ensure that only one of the turnstiles can be opened at any one time.

# i

# Notice!

The output signal (Out) 3 is to be set potential free (dry mode) The signal "door lock of opposite direction" is active on the 0. It is to be used for output 3 "normally closed".

# 5.5.7

# Doors

# **Configuring a Door: General Parameters**

Door	Options Events	
	Name:	AMC-ROWM-E1-D
	Description:	AMCRCWM £1-0
		y .
	Mantrap option:	F
	Division:	Common

#### Figure 5.1:

Parameter	Possible values	Description		
Name	Alphanumeric, up to 16 characters	The generated default value may optionally be replaced by a unique name.		
Description	Alphanumeric, up to 255 characters			
Division	Default division is "Common"	Relevant only if the <b>Divisions</b> feature is licensed.		
Only for door models 01 and 03 if a mantrap is configured:				
Mantrap option	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	A mantrap exists where two combined doors use door model 01 or 03. Activate the mantrap option for <b>both</b> doors. The doors will also require special physical wiring.		

#### **Configuring a Door: Options**

Door	Options Events		
	Uut of order:		
	Unlock door:	0 = Door is in normal mode	•
	Time model:	<no modelb-<="" th="" time=""><th>×</th></no>	×
	Max. lock activation time:	50 1/10 sec.	
	Min. lock activation time:	10 1/10 sec.	
	Door inertia:	0 1/10 sec.	
	Alarm open time:	300 1/10 sec.	
	Door strike mode:	1 = Disable "request to exit" button immediately	•
	Door contact:	<b>V</b>	
	Bolt contact:	E	
	Extended door open time (handicaped persons):	N	

Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Manual operation	0 = check box is clear 1 = check box is selected.	0 = the door is in normal mode (default), that is, it is subject to access control by the overall system.

		1 = door is excluded from the access control system. The door is not controlled and does not generate messages. It can only be locked or unlocked manually. All other parameters for this door are turned off. This parameter must be set for door and reader separately.
Unlock door	0 = Door is in normal mode 1 = Door is unlocked 2 = Door is unlocked depending on time model 3 = Door is open depending on time model after first passing through 5 = Door is blocked long-term 6 = Door is blocked depending on time model	<ul> <li>0 = normal mode (default) - the door will be locked or unlocked depending on the access rights of the credentials.</li> <li>1 = unlock for extended period - access control is suspended for the period.</li> <li>2 = unlock for a time period defined by the time model. Access control is suspended during the period.</li> <li>3 = locked as long as the time model is active until the first person gets access - then open as long as the time model is active.</li> <li>5 = blocked until manually unblocked.</li> <li>6 = locked as long the time model is active - there is no door control, the door cannot be used while the time model is active.</li> </ul>
Time model	one of the available time models	Time model for door opening times. If the door modes 2, 3, 4, 6, and 7 are selected the list box for the time models is available. The selection of a time model is required.
Max. lock activation time	0 - 9999	Time span for the activation of the door opener, in 1/10 of second - default: 50 for doors, 10 for revolving doors (03), and 200 for barriers (05c or 09c).
Min. lock activation time	0 - 9999	Minimum time span for the activation of the door opener, in 1/10 of a second. Electromagnetic locks need some time to de- magnetize - default: 10.
Door inertia	0 - 9999	After activation time has passed, door may be opened in this time span, without an alarm being issued, in 1/10 of second. Hydraulic doors need some time to built up pressure - default: 0.
Alarm open time	0 - 9999	If the door stays open after this time span, a message is issued (door open too long), in 1/10 of a second - default: 300. 0 = no time out, no message
Door strike mode	List box entry	0 = REX (request-to-exit) button is disabled after activation time

		1 = REX (request-to-exit) button is disabled immediately (= default)
Door contact	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = door has no frame contact 1 = door has a frame contact. A closed contact usually means that the door is closed. (= default)
Bolt contact	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = door has no bolt contact (= default) 1 = door has a bolt contact. A message is issued when the door is opened or closed.
Extended door open time (handicapped persons)	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = the lock activation time is normal. 1 = the lock activation time is extended by the factor set in the system-wide EXTIMFAC parameter. This is to give disabled persons more time to pass through the door. (= default)

#### **Configuring a Door: Events**

```
        Door
        Options
        Events

        The following events will be available for use under "Associations":
        Intrusion:
        Intrusion:

        Door state open/close:
        Intrusion:
        Intrusion:
        Intrusion:
```

Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Intrusion	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = no intrusion message. This is useful if a door can be freely opened from the inside. 1 = Upon unauthorized opening a message will be triggered. Another message will indicate the subsequent closure. (default)
Door state open/ closed	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = no "door open" message is sent (default) 1 = a message is sent upon opening or closing.

5.5.8

# Readers

# **Configuring a Reader: General Parameters**

I-BPR K	Options	Door control	Additi	onal settings	Cards		
		Na	me :	I-BPR K			0
		Descrip	tion:	I-BPR K			$\sim$
							$\sim$
		Divi	sion:	Common			$\sim$
		т	ype:	I-BPR K			$\sim$
		Activate encry	ption:	Supporte	d only b	y OSDP v2	2 reader

tivate encryption:	Supported only by OSDP v2 readers.
--------------------	------------------------------------

Parameter	Possible Values	Description
Reader name	alphanumeric, restricted to between 1 and 16 characters	The default value can be replaced by a unique name.
Reader description	alphanumeric: 0 to 255 characters	A free text description.
Division	Default "Common" division.	Only relevant if Divisions are licensed and in use.
Туре	alphanumeric, restricted to between 1 and 16 characters	Type of reader, or group of readers

96

I-BPR K Options Door control Additional settings Offline locking system Key cabinet Cards
PIN code required: 0 = PIN code turned <
Time model for PIN codes: <pre><no modell="" time=""></no></pre>
Access also by PIN code alone:
Reader terminal / bus address: 1 💌
Attendant required: )
Membership check: 0 - no check
Membership time model: <no modell="" time=""></no>
Group access: 1
Deactivate reader beep if access granted:
Deactivate reader beep if access denied:
VDS - Mode:
Max. time for arming: 50 1/10 Sec.

#### **Configuring a Reader: Options**

Parameter	Possible values	Description
PIN code required	0 = PIN code turned off - no input necessary (default) 1 = PIN code turned on - input always necessary 2 = PIN code controlled by time model - input only necessary if outside	This field is only enabled if the reader has an input device. Note that checks on the card, such as its authorizations and access sequence (if enabled), take precedence over the correctness of the PIN.
Time model for PIN codes	one of the available time models	The selection of a time model here is mandatory if the parameter <b>PIN code</b> <b>required</b> parameter is set to 2.
Access also by PIN code alone	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	Determines whether this reader can also permit access based on a PIN alone, that is without a card, if the access control system is so configured. See <i>Access by PIN alone, page</i> <i>108</i>
Reader terminal / bus address	1 - 4	For AMC 4W: Numbered corresponding to the Wiegand-Interfaces.

		For AMC 4R4: Numbered like the jumpered address of the reader.
Attendant required	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = visitor needs no attendant (default) 1 = the attendant must also use the reader
Membership check	List box entry	Membership check is typically used in the early phases before an access control system goes live. Here access is granted based on the generic company ID of the credential rather than its unique personal ID. <b>IMPORTANT</b> Membership check only works with physical credentials where the card definitions are predefined in the system (gray background), <b>not</b> with customized definitions or biometric credentials. <b>0 - no check</b> Membership check is off, but the card is checked for authorizations as normal (default) <b>1 - check</b> The card is checked only for company ID, that is for membership of the system. <b>2 - depending on time model</b> The card is checked for company ID (membership) but only during the period defined in the membership time model.
Membership time model	one of the available time models	The time model enables/disables the membership check. The selection of a time model is mandatory for <b>Membership check</b> option 2.
Group access	1 - 10	For readers with keypad: Minimum number of valid cards which must be presented to the card reader before the door is opened. The group can consist of more cards than this number; in which case the ENTER/# key is used to signal that the group is complete. Thereupon the door is opened. For readers without keypad: The exact number of valid cards which must be presented to the card reader before the door is opened. The default value is 1.

Deactivate reader beep if access granted	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	If activated (1) the reader remains silent if an authorized user is granted access.
Deactivate reader beep if access not granted	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	If activated (1) the reader remains silent when an unauthorized user is denied access.



The "Deactivate Reader Beep" functions depend on the respective reader firmware. The firmware of some readers may not support this function.

VDS mode	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected	If activated (1) the signalization of the of the reader is switched off.
Max. time for arming	1 - 100 [1/sec]	Maximum time for feedback from intrusion panel that arming is completed.

#### **Network and Operation modes**

This tab is only displayed for networked biometric readers.

**Templates** are stored patterns. They can be card data or biometric data.

Templates can be stored both on devices above the reader in the device tree, and on the reader itself. Data on the reader is periodically updated by the devices above it.

The reader can be configured to use its own templates when making access decisions, or only to use the templates from the devices above it.

Parameter	Description
IP address:	The IP address of this networked reader
Port:	The default port is 51211
Templates on server	
Card only	The reader reads card data only. It authenticates them against data from the overall system.
Card and fingerprint	The reader reads both card data and fingerprint data. It authenticates them against data from the overall system.
Templates on device	
Person dependent verification	The reader allows settings of the individual cardholder to determine which <b>Identification mode</b> it uses. The personnel data offers the following options:

Parameter	Description
	<ul> <li>Fingerprint only</li> <li>Card only</li> <li>Card and fingerprint</li> <li>These are described later in this table.</li> </ul>
Fingerprint only	The reader reads fingerprint data only. It authenticates them against its own stored data.
Card only	The reader reads card data only. It authenticates them against its own stored data.
Card and fingerprint	The reader reads both card data and fingerprint data. It authenticates them against its own stored data.
Card or fingerprint	The reader reads either card data or fingerprint data, depending on which the cardholder offers first. It authenticates them against its own stored data.

# Configuring a Reader: Door Control

I-BPR K	Options	Door control	Additional settings	Cards		
			Reader blocking:	0 = Readerisir	n normal mode	$\sim$
		Time mode	el to block reader:	<no mode<="" td="" time=""><td>el&gt;</td><td><math>\sim</math></td></no>	el>	$\sim$
			Office mode: [			
		I	Manual operation: [			
		Check time mo	odel upon access: [			
		Addit	tional verification: [			
		Host	request timeout:	330 1/10	sec.	
	O	pen door if no a	answer from host: [			

Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Reader blocking	List box entry	<ul> <li>0 = Reader in normal mode - no blockade (= default)</li> <li>1 = Reader is permanently blocked - permanent blockade</li> <li>2 = Reader is blocked depending on time model - blockade according to time model set with Time model to block reader</li> </ul>
Time model to block reader	one of the time models defined in the system.	Blocks the reader according to the time model selected.

Office mode	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	Allows this reader to be used in Office mode ,
Manual operation	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = reader in normal mode (= default) 1 = reader is effectively removed from the access control system, that is "out of order". No commands are received. All other parameters for this reader are turned off. The parameter must be set independently for both the reader and door.
Check time models upon access	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	<ul> <li>0 = Time models will not be checked. There is no time-restriction for access.</li> <li>1 = If the cardholder has a time model assigned to it, either directly or as an areatime authorization, the time model will be checked.</li> <li>(= default)</li> </ul>
Additional verification	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	0 = host verification is not required 1 = host verification is required (default) ( <b>IMPORTANT</b> : Activation of this option is required for additional video verification by the operator of a Bosch BVMS or Bosch access control system).
Host request timeout	0 = deactivated	0 = AMC works without host verification (does not work with Area Change or Person Counting). This control is only active if Host verification is deactivated (0) and Open door if no answer from host is activated (1) 1 to 9999 x 1/10 of a second. (Default = 330 =33 seconds). The reader requests confirmation from the access control system. If the confirmation is not received within this time, the AMC checks the parameter <b>Open door if no answer from</b> <b>host</b> and grants or denies access accordingly.
Open door if no answer from host	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (default) (check box is selected)	This control is only active, if the parameter <b>Host verification</b> is set. 0 = does not open the door if the host system fails to confirm before timeout.

		1 (default) = opens the door after time out if the host system fails to confirm before timeout.
Check parking ticket credits	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	If activated (1) the parking ticket credits are checked.
Check overstayed parking	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	If activated (1) it is checked if the parking period was too long.

#### **Configuring a Reader: Verifications**

This tab is of interest only for sites where an external access-control system (with non-Bosch hardware) is in operation, and is coupled with Bosch access-control hardware, either to provide additional verification of identity, or alternative identification if the external system fails.

When the systems are coupled, it does not matter whether the cardholder uses the external or the Bosch access control system first. In order to verify an identification, the two systems must arrive either at identical card code numbers, or at the same personnel ID (in the case of cardholders with multiple cards).

I-BPR P   Options   Door control Verifications   Additional settings   Palm vein verification   0	Offline Locking System   Key cabinet   Cards
Verfication by external system via SDK (e.g. AnyVision)         Verification mode <ul> <li>independent</li> <li>coupled</li> <li>Processing time limit:</li> <li>50 ÷</li> <li>½ sec.</li> </ul> <li>Should the operational readiness of the external system be monitored?</li> <li>No</li> <li>Yes. Access in case of a failure;</li> <li>Access is denied</li> <li>Access is granted by card</li> <li>Access is granted by card and PIN code</li> <li>C Access is granted according to current settings</li> <li>Time limit for response of external system:</li> <li>10 ÷</li> <li>Ye sec.</li>	Explanation Coupled verification The external system and the reader are coupled. Access is only granted if both systems agree. In case of a failure access is granted according to the current settings: Access by card

Parameter	Pos	sible values	Remarks
<b>Verification mod</b> e (radio buttons)	_	Independent (default) coupled	<b>Independent</b> means that the external system acts independently from the card reader. <b>Coupled</b> means that an access request from the external system must be verified by a request at the card reader.

Processing time limit	Integer (tenths of	(Only if <b>coupled</b> is selected)
	seconds)	The time window within which both the
		external system and the Bosch card reader
		should verify the ID of the user.

Should the operational readiness of the external system be monitored?	This part of the dialog defines how the Bosch access control system is to behave if the external system is not reachable. In this case, the Bosch system acts as a substitute for the external system rather than additional verification.
Νο	The Bosch system does not check the readiness of the external system.
Yes, access in case of a failure.	If the external system fails, the Bosch system can grant access according to the following options:

Choose **one** of the following options,

and set a time limit for receiving an access request from the external system.

Access is denied		The reader denies access.
Access is granted by card	Choose only one option.	The reader grants access if the credential authorizes it. All the standard access-control checks are performed, including current time, location and overall system status.
Access is granted by card and PIN code		All the standard access-control checks are performed. Additionally the credential holder must enter a verification PIN, regardless of whether the other property pages of the reader require a PIN.
Access is granted according to current settings.		The reader grants access if the settings on its other property pages in the Device Editor allow it.
Time limit for response of external system	Integer (tenths of seconds)	The maximum time that the Bosch system should wait for the request from the external system, after it reads the card.

Configuring a Reader: Additional Settings
I-BPR K Options Door control Additional settings Cards
Access sequence check: 0 - Deactivated V
Time management:
Double access control
Enable:
Door group ID:
Anti-Pass-Back timeout: 5 minutes
Random screening
Random screening:
Screening rate:
Timeout random screening: Minutes
REX button active when IDS armed:
Read permanently:

= reader takes no part in access sequence necking (= default)
n activated sequence check can handle ersons who are set UNKNOWN in the illowing ways: = The first reading of the card will be down ithout checking the location. All controllers ust be online. = The first reading of the card will be down ithout checking the location. = Checking the location will be down for very reading the card during LAC alfunction.

There is a MAC command to activate or deactivate all access sequence checking generally.

To deactivate access sequence checking for a time period, a value is given in minutes with a maximum of 2880 (= 48 hours). Setting the value "0" deactivates access sequence checking completely.

**Note:** This command can modify access sequence checking only for those readers where the parameter **Enable access sequence** is set. It does not deactivate/activate access sequence checking for all readers.

Time Management	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	If selected the access control system collects data for Time and Attendance management.
Double access control	(anti-passback contro	)
Enable	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	<ul> <li>0 = without double access control (= default)</li> <li>1 = with double access control</li> <li>Within the time span set by the <b>Duration</b></li> <li>parameter, this reader and other readers in</li> <li>the group cannot be used with the same</li> <li>card.</li> <li>If this parameter is activated, a door group ID</li> <li>must be used, even if only one reader is used.</li> </ul>
Door group ID	Letters A - Z and a - z, and "-" 2 characters	Readers can be grouped using a Door group ID. Presenting a card at one reader will block subsequent bookings at all readers in the door group (Default = ) until the time out elapses.
Anti-passback time out	1 - 120	The reader can be used with the same card after this time span has elapsed. As soon as the card is used at a reader outside the group the blockade is lifted immediately. Values are minutes - default = 5.
Random screening	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected	<ul> <li>0 = no random screening</li> <li>1 = random screening according to the factor will have no admittance until unblocked by the dialog <b>Blocking</b>.</li> </ul>
Screening rate	1 - 100	Percentage of random screening for an extended check. Available if random screening is activated.
Timeout random screening	1 - 120	With in the set time the user is subject to the random screening. Values are minutes - default = 5.

REX button active when IDS armed	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	For <b>DM10</b> and <b>DM14</b> only: REX push buttons are disabled by default when the IDS is armed. This would make it impossible to exit the monitored area. This new reader parameter enables the REX button even when the IDS is armed.
Read permanently	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	The reader read permanently if the reader has the respective firmware of the manufacturer.

# Configuring a Reader: Offline Locking System

R15 Options Door control Additional settings Offline locking system Key cabinet Cards	
Reader function: Read only	
Rules for the description: Locking system settings	
Write to card only:	
Access even at write error: 🔽	
Write to card only if authorized:	
Write to card only if LAC is online: 🗖	

Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Reader function		This box must be selected if a motorized card reader is used
Rules for the description		"Withdraw" means to make the card invalid.
Write to card only	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	
Access even on write error	0 = deactivated (check box is clear)	

	1 = activated (check box is selected)	
Write to card only if authorized	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	
Write to card only if LAC is online	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	

#### Configuring a Reader: Key cabinet



Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Check key return	0 = deactivated	Instructs the access control system to ensure
	(check box is clear)	that a key has been returned to a Kemas key
	1 = activated	cabinet before allowing the keyholder to
	(check box is	leave the premises.
	selected)	

# **Configuring a Reader: Cards**

WIE1K Reader   Options   Door control   Addition	nal settings   Offline locking system   Biometrics   Key cabinet	Cards
Card validation		
Motorized card reader:		
Withdraw card:	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$	
Triggering criteria:		
□ Blocked card         □ Visitor card         □ Card is blacklisted         □ Invalid time model         □ No authorization         □ Always collect         □ Collect visitor cards on collecting date         □ Collect visitor cards (no visitor cards) on collect other cards (no visitor cards) on last         □ Time model defined and invalid, independe	llecting date it day of validity ent of access and reader parameters ipendent of access and reader parameters	

Parameter	Possible values	Remarks
Motorized card reader	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	Select this check box if a motorized card reader is used
Withdraw card	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	In the case of a motorized card reader Withdraw means physically retain the card. In the case of other card readers Withdraw means that the system makes the card invalid.
Triggering criteria	0 = deactivated (check box is clear) 1 = activated (check box is selected)	Select from this list any criteria that should trigger the action <b>Withdraw card</b> .



# Notice!

Motorized card readers can only be used with IBPR readers.

#### **Refer to**

- Access by PIN alone, page 108

#### 5.5.9

# Access by PIN alone

#### Background

Keypad readers can be configured to allow access by PIN alone.

When readers are so configured, the access control operator can assign individual PINs to selected personnel. In effect, these personnel receive a "virtual card" that consists solely of a PIN. This is called an Identification PIN. By contrast a Verification PIN is a PIN used in combination with a card, to enforce greater security.

The operator can enter PINs for personnel manually, or assign to them PINs generated by the system.

Note that the same personnel can continue to access using any physical cards that are also assigned to them.

#### Supported reader types

Keypad readers can be used for access by PIN alone, but **not** fingerprint readers.

#### **Prerequisite authorization for Operators**

Authorization for a cardholder to access by PIN alone is only grantable by operators with the special authorization to assign virtual cards. To give an operator this authorization, proceed as follows.

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Administration > ACE User profiles
- Select the User profile that is to receive the authorization:
   Either enter it in the text field **Profile name** or use the search facility to find the desired
- profile. 3. In the list of dialogs, click the cell containing **Cards**
- A popup window called **Special functions** appears near the bottom of the main window pane.
- 4. In the Special functions pane select the check box for Assign virtual cards (PIN)
- 5. Click or **Apply** to save your changes

#### Assigning an Identification PIN to a cardholder

See the ACE operation manual online help section: Permitting access by PIN alone

#### Setting the length of the Identification PIN for supported reader types

The length of manually entered or system-generated PINs is governed by the parameter set in the system configuration.

BIS Configuration Browser dialog

Infrastructure > ACE PIN Codes > (the lower dialog pane) Identification PIN code configuration > PIN code length
8	BIS Confi	guration Browser
File Edit Extras Help		
Betector types	🖌 Apply 🔀 Discard	
ACE PIN codes ACE Card coding configu ACE Card reader ACE Card definition ACE Card definition ACE Custom fields	PIN code configuration Allowed number of PIN code trials: β PIN code length: 6 separate IDS-PIN: Identification PIN code configuration PIN code length: 8	~
Administration          Connections         Connections         Image: Connections		

### Configuring a reader for access by PIN alone

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader**.
- 2. In the **Workstation** pane select the workstation to which the reader is physically connected.
- 3. Right-click the workstation and add a reader of type **Dialog Enter PIN** or **Dialog Generate PIN**.
- 4. Select the reader in the Workstations pane.A custom reader configuration pane appears to the right of the Workstations pane.
- 5. Verify that the drop-down list **Card usage default** contains the default value **Virtual card. Use PIN as card**.
- 6. Click or **Apply** to save your changes
- 7. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to **Connections.**
- 8. Select the reader at the entrance where you wish to configure access by PIN alone.
- 9. In the Options tab, select the check box Access also by PIN code alone.

```
10. Click — or Apply to save your changes
```

### 5.5.10 Extension board - AMC...EXT

### Creating an AMC-I/O-EXT (I/O Extension Board)

Extension boards provide additional input and output signals, if the eight contacts located on the AMC are not sufficient for the connection of the necessary contacts (for example, with elevators).

These extensions are physically connected to the associated AMC and can be installed only below the respective AMCs in the Device Editor. The corresponding AMC entry is selected in the explorer for the creation of an AMC-EXT, and the entry **New Extension Board** is chosen in the context menu **New Object**.

Delete object Ctrl+L New extension board Ctrl+E

A selection dialog for the creation of the extensions appears.

Name	Тур	Nummer 4		Add
AMC_IO08_008_1	AMC_IO08	1		Delete
F			N	

AMC-EXT is available in two variants:

- AMC\_IO08: with 8 inputs and 8 outputs
- AMC\_IO16: with 16 inputs and 16 outputs
- AMC\_4W extension: with 8 inputs and 8 outputs

The selection dialog contains an entry with an AMC\_IO08. By double-clicking the list box in the **Type** column, you can also place an AMC\_IO16.

208 💌		1 1 2 2
		Delar.
208		Delet
D16		
		~
	D08 D16	008 016

You can connect up to three extensions to one AMC. A mix of the two variants is possible. Click **Add** to create more list entries. These can all the column entries can be customized.

Name	Тур	Nummer 🛆	Add
AMC_IO08_008_1	AMC_IO08	1	
AMC_IO08_008_2	AMC_IO08	2	Delete
AMC_IO08_008_3	AMC_IO08	3	-
<		>	

Extension boards are numbered 1, 2 or 3 as created. The numbering of the signals begins for each board at 01. The signal number In combination with the board number provides a unique identification. The signals of the extension boards can also be seen on the tab of the AMC to which they belong.

Together with the input and output signals on the AMC up to 56 signal pairs can thus be provided.

Extension boards can be added as required individually or at a later date up to the maximum number (3 per AMC).

### Creating an AMC2 4W-EXT

It is possible to configure special extension boards (AMC2 4W-EXT) for controllers with Wiegand reader interfaces AMC2 4W). These modules provide an additional 4 Wiegand readers connections as well as 8 input and 8 output contacts each. Thus the maximum number of readers and doors connectable per AMC2 4W can be doubled to 8.



### Notice!

The AMC2 4W-EXT can not be used as a standalone controller, but only as an extension to an AMC2-4W.The doors are controlled and the access control decisions are made only by the AMC2 4W.

The AMC2 4W-EXT can only be used in connection with an AMC2 4W. As it only has Wiegand reader interfaces it is not usable with the AMC variant AMC2 4R4.

Like the I/O extension boards (AMC2 8I-8O-EXT and AMC2 16I-16O-EXT) the AMC2 4W-EXT is connected via the extension interface of the AMC2 4W. The extension board has neither memory nor display of its own, but is controlled entirely by the AMC2 4W.

One AMC2 4W-EXT and a maximum of three I/O extensions can be connected to each AMC2-4W.

To create an AMC2 4W-EXT in the system right-click the desired parent AMC2 4W in the Explorer and select **New object** > **New extension board** from the context menu.

# i

### Notice!

The + button in the tool bar of the Device data editor can only be used for adding entrances. Extension boards can only be added via the context menu.

The same selection dialog appears as for creating I/O extensions, except that the list for an AMC2 4W contains the additional element AMC IO08 4W.

Name	Тур	Nummer 🌷	Add
AMC_IO08_011_1	AMC_IO08	1	-
	AMC IO08 AMC IO08 4W AMC IO16		Delete
<		>	

The list entry AMC2 4W can only be added only once, whereas up to three I/O Extensions can be added.

The button **Add** adds new list entries. In the case of an AMC2 4W the maximum number is 4 whereby the fourth entry is created as an AMC2 4W-EXT board.

Extension boards are numbered according to creation order 1, 2 or 3. The AMC2 4W-EXT receives the number 0 (zero). The numbering of the signals for the AMC2 4W-EXT continues from that of the controller, namely 09 to 16, whereas for each I/O board the numbering begins with 01. The signals for all extension boards are also shown on the tab for the relevant AMC2 4W.

Together with the input and output signals of the AMC2 4W up to 64 signal pairs can be provided.

### Modifying and deleting extension boards

The first tab contains the following controls for configuring extension boards.

Parameter	Possible values	Description
Board name	Restricted alphanumeric: 1 - 16 digits	The default identification guarantees a unique name, but it can be overridden manually. Please ensure that the ID is unique. Network connections with DHCP servers should use the network name.
Board description	alphanumeric: 0 - 255 digits	This text is displayed in OPC branch.
Board number	1 - 3	Number of the board connected to the AMC. Display field, only.
Power supply	0= deactivated (check box is selected) 1= activated (check box is selected)	Supervision of the supply voltage. With voltage breakdowns a message is generated at the end of a delay. The supervision function assumes the use of a USV, so that a message can be generated. 0 = no supervision 1 = supervision activated
Division	Default value <b>Common</b>	Relevant only where the <b>Divisions</b> feature is license.

The tabs Inputs , Outputs and Signal Settings have the same layout and function as the corresponding tabs for the controllers.

### **Deleting extension boards**

It is only possible to delete an extension board when none of its interfaces is occupied. The

associated signals must first be configured on a different board before the delete button and the context menu option **Delete object** become usable.

### AMC2 4W-EXT

Because readers which occupy extension boards can not be removed or reconfigured singly, they need to be deleted along with their corresponding entrances. Not until then can the AMC2 4W-EXT be removed as well.

### 5.6 Additional Information

### 5.6.1 Optional additional readers

### **Optional additional readers at entrances**

Door models 01, 03a, 03b, 06a, 14a, 14b can have a maximum of two inbound and two outbound readers.

To configure these additional readers click **Connections** menu, Right-click an AMC controller in the Device Editor and select **New Object** > **New Entrance** Prerequisites:

- There are enough connections available on the responsible door controller
- The first reader is configured before the second in each direction.

### Printing summaries of AMC signals

To print an overview of the signals assigned to an AMC, click **Connections** menu > (Device Editor) > Select an AMC controller > Open its **Terminals** tab and click the **Print** button. To aid the technician it is usually beneficial to place a printout within the enclosure that houses the AMC.

### Configuring anti-passback control

Three parameters influence the behavior of the anti-passback control:

- ANTIPASS: Activation/deactivation of control
- ANTIPGRP: Marking of readers establishing the blockade, whenever a reader of this group is used
- ANTIPTIME: Wait time, until a reader from this group can be used again Default setting for ANTIPASS is 5 minutes.

If reader parameter ANTIPTIME is set to "0", this reader takes no part in the control. If ANTIPASS = "1", the following is valid for ANTIPGRP:

- ANTIPGRP = "--": This reader takes part in the anti-passbackcontrol and terminates a blockade.
- ANTIPGRP = "AA": This reader takes part in the anti-passbackcontrol and initiates a blockade. Whenever within ANTIPTIME the card is read at a reader from the same group, the persons gets no access.

An example shows what consequences different group settings have:

Assume a room with

- door model 01a
- an entrance reader = "RDR-E"
- an outgoing reader = "RDR-A"
- ANTIPASS = 1
- ANTIPTIME = 5

The following settings are possible through variations of ANTIPGRP:

- RDR-E: ANTIPGRP = "AA"; RDR-A: ANTIPGRP = "AA"

Upon entering the room, the anti-passback control is activated with 5 minutes. If within this time the entrance or outgoing reader reads the card, the access is denied, because both readers have the same group ID. Therefore this combination is not useful.

- RDR-E: ANTIPGRP = "AA"; RDR-A: ANTIPGRP = "--"

Upon entering the room the anti-passback control is activated with 5 minutes. Because the outgoing reader is configured as "deletion reader", access is granted after reading the

card. Simultaneously, the blockade is deleted. Further bookings are possible at the entrance reader. Note that there will be no new blockade established at the outgoing reader. For example, the card can be presented multiple times at the outgoing reader. As a consequence, double bookings are only possible at the outgoing reader.

- RDR-E: ANTIPGRP = "AA"; RDR-A: ANTIPGRP = "AB"
   Upon entering the room, the anti-passback control is activated with 5 minutes. Because the outgoing reader belongs to another group, access is granted. The blockade of the "AA" group is terminated, so that the card can be offered again immediately at the entrance reader. For the "AB" group, a blockade is established. This combination makes sense, if a blockade is intended in the exit direction. Double readings are not possible at the entrance nor at the outgoing reader. Only the sequence entrance reader outgoing reader entrance reader outgoing reader works.
- RDR-E: ANTIPGRP = "AA"; RDR-A: ANTIPGRP = ""(no data)
   Upon entering the room, the anti-passback control is activated with 5 minutes. Because the outgoing reader belongs to no group and is not a "deletion reader", ANTIPTIME is not reset. The blockade of the entrance reader will continue for the time set even if the outgoing reader gets a reading.













### 5.6.3 Configuring Random screening

### Introduction to random screening

The **random screening** option is used to select for additional security checks random persons entering or leaving a site. Upon presenting their card at a suitably configured door the selected person's record receives a block for the whole system. The event recorded in the event log. The person is denied access through all doors, and invited to proceed instead to security personnel.

After performing the additional checks the security personnel uses the ACE GUI to manually remove the block from the person's record.

### The random screening process



- 1. Cardholder presents card; Random screening places a system-wide block on the cardholder's record.
- 2. Cardholder is diverted to security booth
- 3. Cardholder undergoes additional security checks. ACE Operator removes the block from the cardholder's record. See , *page 122*
- 4. Cardholder leaves the security booth, bypassing the original reader

### Prerequisites for random screening

- Only persons authorized to pass through the entrance in the defined direction can be randomly selected. As authorizations are checked before random screening takes place any unauthorized person will immediately be denied access, and will not be included in the random selection process.
- Only persons that have not been exempted from screening can be randomly selected.
   Exemption is configured in the ACE application > Cards dialog > Other data tab > check box Excluded from random screening
- The entrance should be of mantrap or turnstile type to prevent one person's "tailgating" another without presenting their own ID.
- A card reader must be present for the relevant direction of passage.
- Random screening is configured for each reader separately.
- Only an operator with the necessary permission in their profile can configure random screening for a reader.
  - Configuration Browser > Administration > ACE User profiles
- There should be an ACE workstation in the immediate vicinity for removing any blocks placed by the system on persons' records.

### Configuring random screening for a reader

To configure a reader for random screening proceed as follows:

1. In the Device Editor, DevEdit select a reader at the door where random screening is to take place. Select the **Additional settings** tab.

🚴 BIS Configuration Browser		
File Edit Extras Help		
File Edit Extras Help	Apply       X         Device data       Device type assignment         Image: Second Secon	ards )
Administration  Connections	Enable: 1         Door group ID:         Anti-Pass-Back timeout: 5         minutes         Random screening         Screening rate: 10         %         Timeout random screening: 30         Minutes         REX button active when IDS armed: []         Read permanently: []	

- 2. Select the **Random screening** check-box.
- 3. In the **Screening rate** field, enter the percentage of persons to be selected for screening.
- 4. Optionally enter a number of minutes in the field. **Timeout random screening**. After a randomly selected person has been denied access, and their record blocked, the system waits for this number of minutes before automatically removing the block. There is no need in this case for security personnel to remove the block from the person's record manually.

**Note:** if the field remains empty, or contains the value 0, then there is **no time limit** for the block, and it must be removed manually by security personnel.

5. Save your settings.

## Switching random screening on and off in the BIS client Device Overview Prerequisite

Random screening has been configured in the device editor, DevEdit **Procedure** 

Right click a reader in the Device Overview and select

### Random screening on

- or
- Random screening off

**Note:** The **Screening rate** and **Timeout** parameters are automatically read from the configuration, and **not** requested by pop-up dialog. Thus it is essential to configure the reader in DevEdit beforehand.



#### Notice!

In ACE and AMS clients the screening rates of readers can be adjusted from the following dialog:

Main menu > System data > Random screening

í
---

### Notice!

Selection is at random. It is therefore possible, e.g. with a screening percentage of 10%, for the next person entering also to be selected. The configured screening percentage is achieved gradually as the number of bookings increases.

#### Removing blocks placed by random screening

The ACE operator deletes the block in the Access Engine client as follows:

- 1. Navigate to Main menu > Blocking
- 2. Enter the name of the person who has been blocked, to display their record
- 3. In the **Blocking** pane of the **Blocking** dialog, select the current random screening block from the list.
- 4. Click the **Delete** button.
- 5. Confirm the deletion

### 5.7 Assigning detector types

In the dialog detector types (Infrastructure menu) all BIS installed devices can be configured as regards their statuses, data transmissions and the commands they will accept from the user interface.

When Access Engine is installed a number of detector types are created which can be modified, deleted or added to as required.

For further details please consult the online help for that dialog.

s bis configuration browser	
jile Edit Extras Help	
States	A POSC
Detector types	( BOSC
ACE PIN codes	Commands
ACE Card coding config	Detector type commands     Euther possible commands:
New Rename Dele	
	Access request reply Door open permanent
ACE Card definition	Entry/Exit blocking
ACE Custom fields	Grant access
ACE_Log	Manual mode on/orr
- ACE_R_Event	Relay set/reset
AMC_IO	
- AREA	
DMS	Delete
DOOR	
DOP	
GUARDTOUR	Copy Attribute Parameter
BEADER	
AMC2-ID-NET	
Administration	
BOSCHOPCSNMPserverAE1	
Locations	
EVM5     ES00 receiver	
Connections	
- Divar	State mappings Symbols
Diffrastructure	C. The reported states will be applied to the system without changes
FAT_OPC	The renorted states are manued:
General settings	
Message pool	+ 🛃 🗙
Derator	Reported states
E PSManSys	string: 01000301 4101 - Access
Tools Series 9000/7000 panels	string: 0100000d 40/6 - Init start
Video Let IP Video	string: 01000104 4078 · Device blocked
> Videoset in video	string: 01000206 4079 - Fingerprint enabled

In Access Engine there is a special detector type for every device. Whenever a controller or entrance is created in the device data editor (DevEdit) the corresponding detector type is automatically assigned. The mapping can be seen on the additional tab **Device Type Assignment** in the device editor.

ᆶ BIS Configuration Browse	er	- 7 🛛
<u>File E</u> dit E <u>x</u> tras <u>H</u> elp		
Connection servers	Apply X Discard  Device data Device type assignment	BOSCH
	BIS addresses	
Res. Administration	AccessEngine     AccessEngine	<ul> <li>In</li> </ul>
Cocations	e egg Eror ₽ ∰ GuardTour and Ion	
Connections	Properties of 'Devices.BPR HI-5'	
Infrastructure	Description: BPR HI Detector type: READER	•
General settings	☐ Signalizes device malfunction	_
Logging / Protocol		
Tools *		
🍓 BIS	Ready 🛃 C:\MgtS\Customer_Configuration\ACE	

If certain devices require other detector types, e.g. with a bigger command set, then the new detector type can be defined using the detector types dialog and later assigned to that specific device. In this way the default assignments of detector types can be customized and overridden. The changes made here will persist for future use in the device data editor.

### 5.8 Hierarchical cardholder management

### **Overview and benefits**

In large multi-server systems it may be beneficial to allow lower level ACE servers some degree of autonomy in the creation of cardholders and devices. They can then continue to create cardholder and device data if connection to the top-level server, that is the server with the main database, is temporarily lost.

When the connection is reestablished, **cardholder data** that was created at lower levels is normally merged with the cardholder data from the top-level server.

**Device data** temporarily created at lower levels in the hierarchy is normally overwritten by data from the top-level server.

### Introduction to the ACE Hierarchy Tool

The ACE Hierarchy Tool in the directory <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin is a tool for the following tasks:

- Defining the role of the server on which it is executed. The role can be
  - top-level server (Level 3)
  - mid-level server (Level 2)

- bottom-level server (Level1)
- Defining the **Type of data transfer**, that is how the data created at lower levels should be handled when connection to the top-level server is reestablished. There are the following possibilities:
  - The lower-level data is merged with the higher-level data. This is the default type for replication from top-level server to mid-level server .
  - The lower-level data is deleted and overwritten by data from higher levels. This is the default type for replication from mid-level server to bottom-level server .
- Defining the **Data to be transferred**, that is whether only the access control data (cardholder data) is replicated down the hierarchy, or both access control data and device-dependent data together.
  - **Only access control data.** This is the default value for replication from top-level server **to** mid-level server
  - Access control and device data. This is the default value for replication from midlevel server to bottom-level server

See below for a detailed description of the categories of data for replication, that is, which data are access control data, and which are device-dependent data.

### Categories of data for replication

Access control data (cardholder data) are the following. These data are always replicated down the hierarchy.

- Companies
- Person classes
- Persons
- Cards
- Visitors
- Blocks on Persons, including all that person's cards.
- Authorizations for personnel and visitors
- Active Wiegand card definitions
- Authorization profiles, including their assignments to personnel and/or visitors.
- Time models including Special Days
  - Note that time models, including special days, must be created and maintained only on the top-level server

**Device dependent data** are the following. These are usually replicated only from mid-level server to bottom-level server

- Assignments of readers to Authorizations
- Workstations including Authorizations and Profiles
- ACE Areas including named places and parking-lot data
- Guard tours
- Access sequence control



The following	diagram	illustrates	a cir	mnla	ACE	corvor	hierarchy
The following	ulagram	mustrates	a sii	npie	ACE	Server	merarchy.

3	top-level server. (Level 3) This server carries the master cardholder database. Time-model data for the hierarchy resides only here.
2	mid-level server (Level 2) This server is a child of the layer above and parent of the layer below. Cardholder data is inherited from above, but can also be created here and propagated downward
1	bottom-level server (Level 1 also child server of 2).
Parent	A server that passes data down the hierarchy. Parents can be either level 3 or level 2
Child	A server that receives data from further up the hierarchy. Children can be either level 1 or level 2
Gray arrows	Replication of access control data (cardholder data) alone.
Black arrows	Replication of access control data (cardholder data) and device data together.

### Defining a hierarchy: order of work

The ACE Hierarchy Tool affects only the server on which it is started. In order to build up a hierarchy of ACE servers it is necessary to log on to each machine in turn and locally register it as a member of the hierarchy.

When you register a child server you are always required to specify its parent server. During the registration process all ancestor servers, from which this child server is to receive data, need to be accessible over the network for data consistency checks and assignment of unique IDs.

For this reason hierarchies are built in a top-down manner. Always start with the top-level server and progress downwards.

### Modifying a server that is already in a hierarchy

To modify the attributes of a server, that is one or more of:

- The server's **Parent server**
- The server's Type of data transfer
- The Data to be transferred

...you will need to first delete the server from the hierarchy, and then re-register it.

### Refer to

Deleting a server from the hierarchy, page 129

### 5.8.1 Launching the ACE Hierarchy Tool

You must use a Windows account with Administrator privileges to run the ACE Hierarchy Tool . To launch the tool, double-click on its executable file HierarchyTool.exe in the folder <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin

### 5.8.2 Registering the top-level server

### Prerequisites for registering a top-level server

- BIS with ACE is not just installed but up and running on the server.
- No BIS client is running on the server.
- All participating servers are running exactly the same version of BIS.
- The currently loaded configuration is up to date. There are no unsaved modifications pending.
- If you launch the tool on the top-level server you require only the username and password of a BIS operator on the local machine.

The ACE database of this machine thereby becomes the main database for the entire hierarchy. Changes made in this database will be propagated to all child servers and their descendants.

### Procedure for registering a top-level server

- 1. Log on to an administrator account on the intended top-level server
- 2. Start the hierarchy tool executable from <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin
- At the logon prompt window enter the username and password of a local BIS user with BIS administrator privileges Result: The hierarchy tool verifies the authorizations of the BIS username you have

entered.

- If not verified, an error message will appear.
- If verified, the screen **Select the function of this computer** appears.
- 4. In the pull-down list **Function**, select **Top level server**.
- 5. Click the **Next** button
- 6. The tool prompts for confirmation that the local Access Engine will be stopped, and the MACs cold-booted.

- Click **No** to abort the procedure.
- Click Yes to continue. Status messages describe the restart of Access Engine.
- 7. Finally a summary screen shows the state of the hierarchy. At the moment it contains only the name of the top-level server.
- 8. Click the **Exit** button.

### 5.8.3 Registering a mid-level server

### Prerequisites for registering a mid-level server

- BIS with ACE is not just installed but up and running on the server.
- No BIS client is running on the server.
- All participating servers are running exactly the same version of BIS.
- The currently loaded configuration is up to date. There are no unsaved modifications pending.
- If you launch the ACE Hierarchy Tool on any server that is NOT the top-level server you will require
  - The username and password of a BIS operator on your local node.
  - The username and password of a BIS operator on your local node's parent server. A child server server can have only one parent server.

### The registration process

When a non-top-level server is added to the hierarchy, the ACE Hierarchy Tool needs to climb up the hierarchy to register the child with the top-level server . Data is transferred down from the top-level server differently, according to whether you are adding a mid-level server or a bottom-level server .

### Notice!

MACs, DMSs and other necessary services on the local node will be stopped and restarted ("cold started") in the order required to maintain data-consistency throughout the hierarchy. Depending on the number of dependent door controllers there may be a considerable delay until they have received fresh data, and are able to process access requests again.

### Procedure for registering a mid-level server

- 1. Log on to an administrator account on the intended mid-level server server.
- 2. Start the hierarchy tool executable from <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin
- 3. At the logon prompt window enter the username and password of a local BIS user with BIS administrator privileges

Result: The hierarchy tool verifies the authorizations of the BIS username you have entered.

- If not verified, an error message will appear.
- If verified, the screen **Select the function of this computer** appears.
- 4. In the pull-down list **Function**, select mid-level server .
- 5. Click the **Next** button.

Result: The **Select parent server** screen appears.

6. Enter the name of the parent server, and the username and password of BIS user with BIS administrator privileges on the parent server.

7. Click the **Test connection** button to verify that the parent server +is accessible on the network.

Result: The hierarchy tool verifies the network connection and the authorizations of the BIS username you have entered. Both conditions must be fulfilled for the **Next** button to become active.

- 8. Click the **Next** button.
- 9. The tool prompts for confirmation that the local Access Engine will be stopped, and the MACs cold-booted.
  - Click **No** to abort the procedure.
  - Click Yes to continue. Status messages describe the restart of Access Engine and the registering of the local system with its parent server.
- 10. Finally a summary screen shows the state of the hierarchy, with the server you have added and its parent server. Note that the tool makes the following default selections:
  - Type of data transfer: Merge data from parent and local server
  - Data to be transferred: Only the access control data (persons, cards, authorization profiles)
- 11. Click the **Exit** button.
- 12. In the BIS Configuration Browser click Connections > AccessEngine > <name of each MAC> and verify that the check box Active is selected on the property page after their "cold start". If not, select these check boxes now.
  - If the ACE synchronization popup appears at this point, click **Yes**.

### Refer to

- Introduction to the ACE Hierarchy Tool , page 123

### 5.8.4 Registering a bottom-level server

### Prerequisites for registering a bottom-level server

- BIS with ACE is not just installed but up and running on the server.
- No BIS client is running on the server.
- All participating servers are running exactly the same version of BIS.
- The currently loaded configuration is up to date. There are no unsaved modifications pending.
- If you launch the ACE Hierarchy Tool on any server that is NOT the top-level server you will require
  - The username and password of a BIS operator on your local node.
  - The username and password of a BIS operator on your local node's parent server. A child server server can have only one parent server.

### The registration process

When a non-top-level server is added to the hierarchy, the ACE Hierarchy Tool needs to climb up the hierarchy to register the child with the top-level server . Data is transferred down from the top-level server differently, according to whether you are adding a mid-level server or a bottom-level server .

### Notice!

í

MACs, DMSs and other necessary services on the local node will be stopped and restarted ("cold started") in the order required to maintain data-consistency throughout the hierarchy. Depending on the number of dependent door controllers there may be a considerable delay until they have received fresh data, and are able to process access requests again.

### Procedure for registering a bottom-level server

- 1. Log on to an administrator account on the intended bottom-level server .
- 2. Start the hierarchy tool executable from <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin
- At the logon prompt window enter the username and password of a local BIS user with BIS administrator privileges Result: The hierarchy tool verifies the authorizations of the BIS username you have entered.
  - If not verified, an error message will appear.
  - If verified, the screen **Select the function of this computer** appears.
- 4. In the pull-down list Function, select bottom-level server
- 5. Click the **Next** button.

Result: The **Select parent server** screen appears.

- 6. Enter the name of the parent server, and the username and password of BIS user with BIS administrator privileges on the parent server.
- Click the **Test connection** button to verify that the parent is accessible on the network. Result: The hierarchy tool verifies the network connection and the authorizations of the BIS username you have entered. Both conditions must be fulfilled for the **Next** button to become active.
- 8. Click the **Next** button.
- 9. The tool prompts for confirmation that the local Access Engine will be stopped, and the MACs cold-booted.
  - Click **No** to abort the procedure.
  - Click Yes to continue. Status messages describe the restart of Access Engine and the registering of the local system with its parent server.
- 10. Finally a summary screen shows the state of the hierarchy, with the server you have added and its parent server. Note that the tool makes the following default selections:
  - **Type of data transfer:** Allow only data from the parent server
  - Data to be transferred: Access control and device data
- 11. Click the **Exit** button.
- 12. In the BIS Configuration Browser click **Connections** > **AccessEngine** > <name of each MAC> and verify that the check box **Active** is selected on the property page after their "cold start". If not, select these check boxes now.
  - If the ACE synchronization popup appears at this point, click **Yes**.

### 5.8.5 Deleting a server from the hierarchy

### The deletion process and its consequences

If you delete a child server, it is deleted from the databases of its parent server and of the toplevel server.

Deleting a server from the hierarchy does **not** delete the database entries that the server created and propagated while it was a member.



### Notice!

There is no way to delete an entire hierarchy in one session.

The hierarchy must be deleted **bottom-up** by running the ACE Hierarchy Tool on each server in turn, and deleting it.

#### Procedure for deleting a server from the hierarchy

- 1. Log on to the server that you want to delete from the hierarchy.
- 2. Start the hierarchy tool executable from <installation drive>:\MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\bin
- 3. At the logon prompt window enter the username and password of a local BIS user with administrator privileges
- 4. Result: The main window of the ACE Hierarchy Tool appears
- 5. Select the server in the System hierarchy pane of the main window
- 6. Click the **Delete** button
- 7. Confirm the deletion in the popup window.
- 8. Result: The server disappears from the System hierarchy pane of the main window
- 9. Click the **Exit** button

### 5.8.6 Modifying a server in the hierarchy

- To modify the attributes of a server, that is one or more of:
- The server's Parent server
- The server's Type of data transfer
- The Data to be transferred

...you will need to first delete the server from the hierarchy, and then re-register it.

#### Refer to

- Deleting a server from the hierarchy, page 129
- Registering a mid-level server, page 127
- Registering the top-level server, page 126

### 5.8.7 Starting and stopping replicators in BIS

#### Introduction to replicators

A replicator is a computer process that reads or writes data between ACE servers, according to the settings for **Type of data transfer** and **Data to be transferred** for each server.

- A top-level ACE server has one write-replicator process for each of its children.
- A bottom level ACE server has one read-replicator process for its one parent.
- A Level 2 ACE server has both of the above kinds of replicator, one for its parent and one for each of its children.

After the server hierarchy is configured, the ACE database table contains the following hierarchy data:

- The servers
- The replicator processes
- The replicators' status: stopped/running

### When to start and stop replicators

Normally the replicators are started and stopped by the DMS Master process according to its data tables. It is not necessary to start or stop or start replicators manually, except for the following exceptions:

- You need to stop a replicator process to temporarily protect a level 1 or 2 server from being overwritten by its parent while it is performing local tasks.
- You will need to start replicator process if you manually stopped it.

### Viewing replicators in the BIS Configuration Browser

An ACE connection server in the BIS device editor shows a new node **Replicators** below the **Access Engine** node. The replicators are named after the servers on which they reside. The example below shows the view from the configuration browser of a Level-2 server. It has one child server BISACEDEV1 and one parent server BISACEDEV3. Each child server has the sub-addresses Event and State.



### Starting and stopping replicators from a BIS Client

If the configuration with the ACE server hierarchy has been loaded in BIS, and the client restarted, then the same servers will appear in the BIS client as follows.

Devices	Recess	sEngine.Replica	tors	R	efresh
🔂 Operators	Addresses	Sub addresses	Sensors		
Event log	Address	State	Туре	Fast access com	Descrip
AccessEngine	BISACEDE	V1 Unknown	PROCESS	$\bigcirc$	Server: BISAC
Areas	BISACEDE	EV3 Unknown	PROCESS	•	Server: BISAC
GuardTour					
Devices					
Replicators					
Timer					
🔤 ApplicationLauncher					

To start or stop a replicator process, right-click the replicator in the **Address** column of the **Addresses** tab and select **Start** or **Stop**.

### **BIS/ACE** messages

The following messages are sent from ACE to BIS regarding hierarchical cardholder management:

- Mapped on Event sub-address:
  - 0x07000005, the message sent by the replicator to signal that it has started.
  - 0x07000006, the message sent by the replicator to signal that it is stopping.
- Mapped on **State** sub-address:
  - 0x07000009, the message sent by the DMS master process to signal that it has started the replicator.
  - 0x07000007, the message sent by the DMS master process to signal that it has stopped the replicator.

### 5.8.8 Replication in detail

This section describes hierarchical data replication in greater detail than is normally required, and is included for reference purposes.

All access control data (cardholder data) from the top-level server is replicated to each midlevel server (level-2) and **merged** with the data that has been locally generated or modified at level-2.

Merging means that cardholder data will only be overwritten at level-2 if it has been modified or deleted at Level-3.



### Notice!

Consistency of card encodings

In order for data to be merged at all, the customer must ensure that cards with the same codes are not created independently on different levels.

All access control data (cardholder data) from each parent server is replicated to the server's own descendants, but not to the descendants of its siblings.

Device data is replicated only to those Level-1 servers where the devices are connected. Each Level-1 server receives a copy of its own device data that is maintained on its parent Level-2 server. After this replication, no data created previously at Level-1 will persist at Level-1.

A full automatic re-synch happens only when the network connection between a server and its parent server is established or restored. As long as the network connection persists it is only the **changes** at the parent level that are continuously replicated to its child.

ACE device data from the Level-2 server is replicated to Level-1 servers immediately, and each Level-1 server receives from Level-2 only the data pertaining to its own devices.

After replication the data becomes active in ACE immediately. The BIS configuration, on the other hand, needs to be updated and reloaded manually in the BIS Configuration Browser by a Level-1 administrator user, whenever new devices are added or old devices deleted.

### 5.8.9 Limitations of the current version

- The hierarchy must be completely within the BIS Common Division
- The hierarchy supports a maximum of 255 ACE time models, which must all be configured on the Level-3 Top-Level Server.

- BIS operator data is not replicated. Therefore the management of BIS operators, including their authorizations, must be carried out separately on each BIS server.
- A BIS/ACE server must contain no person or device data while it is being registered in the server hierarchy.
- The operating system and BIS version of all servers in the hierarchy must all be of the same language.
- The servers in the hierarchy must all be of exactly the same BIS version. During a BIS update all data transfer is stopped until the version numbers are the same.
- Extended ACE functionality, such as key cabinets (Deister or Kemas), parking-lot management and "PegaSys" Offline Doors have not yet been tested thoroughly in a server hierarchy.

### 5.9 MACs and RMACs in hierarchical topologies

### Introduction

Review the chapter *MACs and RMACs in flat topologies, page 34* regarding definitions and procedures for the configuration of MACs and RMACs in general.

The current chapter covers the differences between the configuration of MACs and RMACs for flat and hierarchical topologies.

In short, the main difference is that a MAC does not simply fail over to another computer, but to the next level up the hierarchy. This strategy provides extra resilience.

### Notice!

Training recommended

In view of the complex and specialized nature of this topic, Bosch recommends that the persons involved attend appropriate technical training.

### Note on the illustrations in this chapter and subchapters

IP addresses in the form \*.\*.\*.dd (where dd is an integer) stand for IP addresses that differ from others in the diagram only by their last digits.



### Prerequisites

- The hierarchy of servers has been set up as described in the chapter *Hierarchical* cardholder management, page 123
- The hierarchy is configured top-down, because each DMS server, except the top-level server, needs to register with its parent in the ACE Hierarchy Tool.
- Each DMS server has at least one MAC. The first MAC can reside either on the same computer as the DMS (for example, MAC-B1 in the illustration), or on its own MAC server computer (for example, MAC-M1 in the illustration).

NOTE: MAC-M1 in the illustration plays no part in the procedures described here.

- For setting up MACs on the DMS server, see section *Configuring a MAC on the DMS* server without RMAC, page 35
- For setting up MACs on a MAC server, see section *Configuring a MAC on its own* MAC server, page 36
- RMACs never reside on the same computers as the DMS or the MAC. They always reside on their own MAC servers. For configuration of RMACs, see section *Adding RMACs to MACs, page 38*

but in the MACInstaller tool set the main parameters as described in the next section.

### Procedure: Setting MACInstaller parameters in hierarchical systems

In an hierarchical system, where multiple DMS servers exist, the RMAC for a MAC on the bottom level, actually interacts with the DMS on the middle level. Thus, in the illustration above, bottom level MAC-B1 fails over to RMAC-B1, one level higher.

When using MACInstaller.exe (see *Using the MACInstaller tool, page 41*) on the MAC and its RMAC, set the parameters as follows:

### On the computer where the MAC is running

- Server: Name or IP address of the DMS server computer on its own level. In the illustration the IP address for the Server parameter for MAC-B1 is the one that ends in 26.
- Port: 6001
- **Number:** 1 (all MACs have Number 1)
- **Twin**: IP address of the computer where the RMAC will run. In the illustration the IP address ends in 24.
- **Update software**: Select this option, as you are configuring a MAC server, not the DMS server.

### On the MAC server computer for the RMAC

- **Server**: Name or IP address of the DMS server computer at middle level. In the illustration the IP address ends in 20.
- **Port:** 6201 (The DMS port number is the MAC port number plus 200)
- Number: 2 (all RMACs have Number 2)
- **Twin**: IP address of the computer where the twin MAC is running. In the illustration the IP address ends in 26.
- **Update software**: Select this option, as you are configuring a MAC server, not the DMS server.

Note that by convention the MACInstaller parameter **Port: (Port to DMS)** for the RMAC, at middle level, is 200 greater than that of its partner MAC at bottom level, as illustrated by the following table.

"Port to DMS" for MAC (bottom level)	"Port to DMS" for RMAC (middle level)
6001	6201
6002	6202
600n	620n

### Refer to

- MACs and RMACs in flat topologies, page 34
- Hierarchical cardholder management, page 123

### 5.10 Custom reader configurations

### Intended audience

This chapter is of interest only to installers of Bosch access control systems that require customer-specific MIFARE DESFire cards, rather than cards with standard Bosch coding. Use of a customized read key is a major strategic decision with far-reaching consequences. It must be made at the highest level of authority.

#### Notice!

Current limitations

Currently custom reader configurations are not compatible with the use of Divisions.
 In the case of an hierarchical system with multiple DMS servers, each DMS server must be configured separately.

### 5.10.1 Introduction

As of BIS 4.9, Access Engine allows the use of customized MIFARE DESFire settings. You can create encrypted parameter files by using the auxiliary tool *Bosch.ReaderConfigTool.exe*. This tool is included in the setups for BIS ACE 4.9, AMS 4.0 and later versions, with its own documentation. Consult that documentation for the current list of compatible readers The following sections describe how to use the Device editor to import an encrypted parameter file and apply it to any or all compatible readers in the hierarchy of access control devices.

### 5.10.2 The reader property: Extended reader parameters

The available extended parameter sets for compatible readers are displayed on their property pages in the device editor under the label **Extended reader parameters**.

Device data Device type assignment				
+ ×   "E () Q				
	LCTSL Options   Door control   Verfice Name : Description:	ations   Additional settings   Palm vein  LCTSL-1  LCTSL  V	verification   Offline Locking System	Key cabinet   Cards
□ I-BPR-1 □ I-BPR-2 □ I-BPR-2 □ AMC 4-R4-3 □ DM 018-3 □ Door-3 □ HADP-1 □ HADP-2	Division: Type: Activate encryption: Extended reader parameters:	Common		
		Porto		

Figure 5.2: Extended reader parameters

The default value of the dropdown list is *No* extended parameters. This is the only possible value unless you import additional parameter sets.

To apply an imported parameter set to a compatible individual reader:

- 1. In the Device editor, select the reader in the device tree
- 2. Select the first property tab
- 3. Select the required parameter set from the list Extended reader parameters
- 4. Click **Apply** or

### Refer to

- Importing a reader parameter set, page 136

### 5.10.3 Importing a reader parameter set

You import and delete parameter files only at the DMS level of the device hierarchy.

### Prerequisite

Access to an approved parameter file for your access control system. By default the file is of type .*ReaderConfigSave* 

### Procedure

1. In the Device Editor, right-click the DMS node and select **Import reader parameter sets** from the context menu.

The popup window **Import reader parameter sets** appears.

- 2. Click **File** and locate the parameter file by use of the file explorer.
- 3. When prompted, enter the password of the parameter file.

If the password is correct, the lower half of the popup window is populated with the following information:

- A list of the reader types to which the parameter set applies.
- The name of the parameter set. You can edit it in this dialog.
- A free-text description, if the creator of the parameter set provided one. You can add or edit a description in this dialog.
- 4. Click **Import** to import the parameter set for possible future use by the access control system.
- The parameter set is imported and stored in the access control system.
- It is added to the list of available parameter sets at the top of the popup window.
- 5. Click **Exit** to exit the popup window **Import reader parameter sets**.

### 5.10.4 Applying a parameter set to readers

### Introduction

Importing a parameter set into the access control system stores it for future use, but does not apply it to readers in the system. Applying the parameter set is an extra step that you can perform at different levels in the device hierarchy:

- DMS
- MAC
- AMC

When you apply a parameter set at the DMS, MAC or AMC level, it can apply only to subordinate readers of reader types for which the set was created. All other subordinate readers remain unaffected.

### Prerequisites

You have successfully imported a reader parameter set.

### Procedure

- 1. In the Device editor, select right-click a reader or a device (DMS, MAC or AMC) whose readers you want to parameterize.
- 2. Select Manage reader parameter sets from the context menu.
- 3. In the upper list pane, **Parameter sets for reader types**, select the parameter set that you want to apply.

Applicable readers are listed in the bottom left pane: **Readers parametrizable with this parameter set**.

- 4. In the list **Readers parametrizable with this parameter set**, select those readers to which you want to apply the selected parameter set.
- If the number of readers is large, use the drop-down lists to restrict the display to subordinates of a particular MAC or AMC.
- 5. Use the arrow buttons to move selected readers into the bottom right pane, **All readers parametrized with the selected parameter set**.

### Notice!

Display of compatible readers

Only readers that are compatible with the parameter set will be listed. If you select the check box **Show all readers** then readers that have other parameter sets will also be displayed. These have a gray background to mark them as read-only for the selected parameter set.

- 6. Click **OK** to close the popup window.
- Back in the Device editor, click Apply or 
   The parameter set is applied to all the readers that you left in the list All readers
   parametrized with the selected parameter set in the popup.

### 5.10.5 Managing reader parameter sets

### Introduction

You can change the application of parameter sets at different levels in the device hierarchy:

- DMS
- MAC
- AMC

Changes at the DMS, MAC or AMC level, can apply only to subordinate readers of reader types for which the set was created. All other subordinate readers remain unaffected.

### Prerequisites

You have successfully imported a reader parameter set.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device editor, right-click a reader or a device (DMS, MAC or AMC)
- 2. Select **Manage reader parameter sets** from the context menu.
- 3. In the upper list pane, **Parameter sets for reader types**, select the parameter set that you want to apply.
- Applicable readers are listed in the bottom left pane: Readers parametrizable with this parameter set.
- Readers to which the parameter file has already been applied are listed in the bottom right pane: All readers parametrized with the selected parameter set.
- 4. Select readers in either list. Use the arrow keys to move readers into and out of the bottom right list, **All readers parametrized with the selected parameter set**.
- IMPORTANT: Make careful note of readers that you take out of the list, for the last step in this procedure.
- 5. When you have completed your changes, click **OK** to close the popup window.
- 6. Back in the Device editor, click **Apply** or
- The parameter set is applied to all the readers that you left in the list All readers parametrized with the selected parameter set.
- It is removed from the readers that you took out of this list.
- 7. Do one of the following to all the readers that you took out of the list:
- Reset factory defaults by using the DIP switches in the reader hardware.
- Apply a different parameter set to them.



### Notice!

The deletion of a parameter set does not reconfigure the readers that used it. The deleted reader configuration will persist in the readers that used it until you reset the reader hardware, or apply a different parameter set.

### 5.10.6 Deleting reader parameter sets

You import and delete parameter files only at the DMS level of the device hierarchy.

### Prerequisites

At least one parameter file has already been imported into your access control system.

### Procedure

1. In the Device Editor, right-click the DMS node and select **Delete reader parameter sets** from the context menu.

The popup window **Delete reader parameter sets** appears.

- 2. In the **Parameter sets for reader types** list, select the parameter set that you wish to delete.
- In the lower right of the popup window, a list appears of all readers that are currently
  parameterized (configured) with the selected parameter set.
- Make careful note of these readers, they will require reset or reconfiguration after you delete the parameter set. See the last step in this procedure for details.
- 3. Click Delete
- 4. Click Exit
- 5. Back in the Device editor, click **Apply** or
- 6. Do one of the following to all the readers that were using the deleted parameter set:
- Reset factory defaults by using the DIP switches in the reader hardware.
- Apply a different parameter set to them.



### Notice!

The deletion of a parameter set does not reconfigure the readers that used it. The deleted reader configuration will persist in the readers that used it until you reset the reader hardware, or apply a different parameter set. 6

### Infrastructure - System Configuration

### 6.1 Card Definition

Use this dialog to activate, deactivate, modify or add the card definitions to be used by your access control system.

### **Dialog path**

Configuration Browser > Infrastructure > ACE Card definition

The following types are predefined by the system, and are not modifiable:

- 32 Bit CSN Standard MIFARE (32 bit)
- HID 26 Standard Wiegand 26 bit code = active (default)
- HID 35 HID corporate 1000
- HID 37 HID 37 bit code CN-H10304
- EM 26 EM 26 Bit code
- Serial readers (AMC 4R4/LACi) 64 bit
- HID 48 HID corporate 1000
- 56 Bit CSN Standard MIFARE Desfire

HID 26 is the default card type, and appears in the list Active card types

### 6.1.1 Active Card Types

The active card types are those types that the card readers in your access control system are to recognize and process. Up to 8 card definitions can be active simultaneously in one system.

For readers with L-Bus or BG900 protocols the list entry **Serial Readers** must be added under **Active Card types** in the Configuration Browser (**Infrastructure** > **ACE Card definition**) in order to make the manual input mask Dialog (Bosch) available in Access Engine for manually entering card data.

### 6.1.2 Creating and Modifying

Click the **+** (green +) button above the right-hand list box to create a new list entry. In contrast to predefined card types the data of newly created types are freely editable. Doubleclick the fields **Name, Description** and **Number of Bits** to edit them.

The name can have a maximum of 80 characters, and the description 255. The number of bits is limited to 64 (if a higher number is entered then this will be reset to the maximum as soon as the text field loses input-focus).

## i

### Notice!

Bit lengths are used to differentiate between Wiegand definitions. Therefore each new definition must have a unique bit length which has not been used by an existing definition.

➤ To modify a data bit, double-click the relevant field. To delete it, first select the data bit then click the X (red x) button.



### Notice!

Only card types that were created by the user can be modified or deleted.

When a single card type is selected (in left or right-hand lists) then its encoding is displayed in the lower part of the dialog. The display shows data bits in 5 rows, and as many columns as the number of bits in the definition.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Field																																
Even1	Г	Π	Г			-1			Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г
Even2	Г	Г	Г	F					Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г
Odd1	Г	Г	Г	Г					Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	F	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	F	Г	Г	Г	Г
Odd2	í-	Ē	F	F	F I	- 1			Ē	Ē		F	F	Ē		F	F	F	Г	F	Ē	Ē		F	F	IT.	F	F	F	F	Ē	F

Each column of the **Field** row can be given a label that determines how that part of the code is to be interpreted. The labels available are as follows:

F	Facility: marks the code part for facility affiliation	
С	Code no: code part containing the individual card number	
E1	Even 1: bit to balance the first Even Parity Mask	The declaration of these values
E2	Even 2: bit to balance the second Even Parity Mask	activates the check box for the
01	Odd 1: bit to balance the first Odd Parity Mask	line.
02	Odd 2: bit to balance the second Odd Parity Mask	
1	Fix bit values contained in the	
0	code	

In the case of the labels E1, E2, O1 and O2 it is enough to select the check-box on the corresponding row. The box on the **Field** row will automatically be marked accordingly. Explanation:

The signal sent by a reader when presented with a card is made up of a series of zeros and ones. For each card type the length of this signal (i.e the number of bits) is exactly defined. In addition to the actual user data, which are saved as code data, the signal also contains control data in order to a) identify the signal as a card signal, and b) verify correct transmission.

In general the fixed zeros and ones are useful for identifying the signal type.

The parity bits, which must yield either a zero (Even Parity) or a one (Odd Parity) as a checksum over selected bits of the signal, are used to verify correct transmission. The controllers can be configured so that they calculate one or two checksums for Even Parities and one or two checksums for Odd Parities.

In the list control, those bits can be marked in the respective lines for the parity checksums (Even1, Even2, Odd1 and Odd2) which should be included in the checksum. In the top line (Field) for every checksum used a bit is defined to balance the checksum according to the parity type. If a parity option is not used, the corresponding line simply remains empty.

### 6.1.3 Activating / Deactivating card definitions

Up to 8 card definitions can be active simultaneously. The definitions to be activated must be moved to the left-hand list **Active Card Types**. This is done by (multi-)selecting one or more definitions on the right-hand side, and clicking the left arrow ( < )button. No more than four definitions can be moved at once. Once four definitions are in place then any surplus are discarded from the move. To add more definitions to **Active Card Types** it will be necessary to delete one or more of those present by (multi-)selecting and moving them to

Notice!

To use readers with L-Bus or BG900 protocols, activate the card type **Serial Reader**. This makes the manual input dialog **Dialog Bosch** available to the dialog manager of the access control system.

### 6.1.4 Creating card data in the dialog manager

### Manual data input

Different input methods are used for Wiegand and Bosch cards.

the right-hand side using the ( > )button, thus deactivating them.

For all Wiegand definitions (HID 26, HID 35, HID 37 and 32 Bit CSN) the dialog box **Dialog (Wiegand)** allows you to enter **Customer code** and **Card no.** (card number). For serial readers the dialog box **Dialog (Bosch)** contains additional fields for **Version** and

### Country code.

### Data input by enrollment reader

In addition to manual data input, any workstation can be equipped with a dialog reader for collecting card data. Use a reader from the list in the following dialog:

- Configuration Browser > **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card Reader**.

If the chosen reader is an input reader for Wiegand cards then all active Wiegand card types will be listed along with the reader

Access Engine > Personnel data > Cards > Reader button > ▶ (right arrow).

One of these card types must be selected in order to ensure the correct saving of the card encoding. That is, the reader itself cannot be selected directly but only indirectly via the choice of Wiegand definition.

If the required card type does not appear in the pull-down list, you must activate it in the card definition dialog.

#### Configuration Browser > Infrastructure > ACE Card definition

ID card no.:		Reader	Ð
	DELTA 1200 iClass R: Standard wiegand	5232 BKL <b>1 26 bit code</b>	
Authorizations	Dialog (Wiegand) Dialog (Bosch)		

HITAG, LEGIC and MIFARE enrollment readers can be selected from the list directly.

ID card no	.:		Reader
		✓ DELTA 1200	) LE BKL USB
		Dialog (Wie	gand)
Authorizations	Other da	Dialog (Boso	:h)

### Card definition for Divisions (multi-party capability)

If you have licensed the Divisions feature for managing multiple parties (aka "Divisions") within the access-controlled premises, it is possible to configure a code area on the card that allows the operator to distinguish between the cards of various Divisions. Use the optional fields (only selectable where Divisions feature has been licensed) to define the position of the **start** bit and the **length** of the Division coding on the cards.

-Range of div	vision code wil	thin card data —	
Start:	÷	Length:	- A-

### 6.2 Configuring card codings

The coding of the access control cards ensures that all card data is unique.

### **Dialog path**

BIS Configuration Browser > Infrastructure > ACE Card coding configuration

😫 BIS Configuration Brows	er	🔳 🗖 🔀
File Edit Extras Help		
<ul> <li>States</li> <li>Detector types</li> </ul>	Apply Discard	BOSCH
Reference ACE PIN codes	Card default code data	
ACE Card reader	C Hexadecimal Version:	
ACE Card definition	Country code:	
🙀 ACE Custom fields	Facility code: 1	
	Check membership only values	
Administration	C Hexadecimal 1. value: 150	·
Tocations	Decimal     2. value: 0	
	. 3. value: 0	
Connections	4. value: 0	
B Infrastructure		
General settings		
🕣 Logging / Protocol		
Tools		
» •	<.	>
🏠 BIS	Ready C:\MgtS\Customer_Configuration\BRP COnfig	

#### Entering numbers in the dialog

For convenience, you can enter numbers in decimal or hexadecimal formats. Select the radio buttons **Hexadecimal** or **Decimal** according to the format specified by the cards' manufacturer.

The main dialog pane is divided into two groups, which are described in more detail below:

- Card default code data
- Check membership only values

### Card default code data

Use these text entry fields to define values for the **Version**, **Country code**, and the **Facility code** which are assigned to the card number when the card is enrolled in the system. If the fields are not writeable, then they are not relevant to any of the active card definitions. For Bosch code all fields are writeable.

If the card is enrolled manually at an operator workstation, then a dialog appears displaying the default values which may be customized for each card.

) Hexadecimal	Version: 0	
Decimal	Country code: 0	_
	Facility code: 1	-1

If the data are provided by the manufacturer as decimal values, select the Decimal radio button and enter the values provided, for example:

Version: 2

Country code: 99

Facility code: 56720

Click Apply to store the data.

#### Notes on inputting default code data:

The default data are stored in the registry of the operating system and each badge number is added at encoding time. Registration takes the form of an **8 digit hexadecimal** value with leading zeros as necessary.

If the code numbers are transferred completely then the system may convert from decimal to hex, pad to 8 places with leading zeros and save the appropriate system parameter.

- Example:
  - Input: 56720
  - Conversion: DD90
  - Saved as: 0000DD90

If the code numbers are transferred separately (split form) then only in **decimal** form. They are converted to a 10-digit decimal number which is constructed as follows:

- Version: 2 digits
- Country code: 2 digits
- Facility code: 6 digits
- If any of the 10 digits are still empty then they are padded with leading zeros
   Example: 0299056720

This 10-digit decimal value is converted and stored as an 8 digit hexadecimal value.

- Example:
  - decimal: 0299056720
  - hexadecimal: 11D33E50



### Notice!

The system validates hex values, in the case of split code numbers, in order to prevent the input of invalid country codes (above hex 63 or decimal 99) and invalid facility codes (above hex F423F or decimal 999,999)


#### Notice!

If the card capture occurs via a connected dialog reader then the default values are assigned automatically. It is not possible to override the defaults when capturing from a reader. In order to do so the capture type should be switched to **Dialog** 

Manual entry of the card number is in decimal format.

When saving the data a 10-digit decimal value (with leading zeros) is created, which is then converted to an 8 digit hexadecimal value. This value is now stored with the default code data as the 16-digit code number of the card.

- Example:
  - Input of the card number: 415
  - 10-digit: 000000415
  - Converted to hexadecimal: 0000019F
  - Combined with the default Code data (see above) and saved as the code number of the badge: 11D33E500000019F

#### **Check Membership only values**

Checking for membership only means that the credential is checked only for membership of a company or organization, not to identify an individual. Therefore do not use the **Membership check only** for readers that give access to high-security areas.

Use this options group to enter up to four company or client codes. The data can be entered as decimal or hexadecimal, but are stored as decimal values in the operating system's registry.

C Hexadecimal	1. value: 150
Decimal	2. value: 0
	3. value: 0
	4. value: 0

Select the reader in the Device Editor, DevEdit, and activate the reader parameter

#### Membership check.

Only the company or client codes within the card data are read and verified against the stored values.

# i

#### Notice!

**Membership check** only works with card definitions predefined in the system (gray background), not with customized definitions.

## 6.3 Enrollment readers

#### Introduction

An enrollment reader is a special card reader that is used for one or more of the following tasks:

- Capturing card data in order to register a cardholder in the system
- Retrieving cardholder data from the system
- Authenticating ACE operators for the ACE client.

Enrollment readers were hitherto always connected directly to an ACE workstation, (normally via a USB or COM port).

As of ACE Version 4.5 any card reader connected to an AMC device can be used as an enrollment reader, in addition to its access-control tasks. However, because it has only one channel (port), a reader cannot do both simultaneously.

#### Note on configuration menus

Dedicated enrollment readers that are connected directly to the workstation via USB or COM ports, are configured in the Configuration Browser in the dialog **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader.** 

Enrollment readers that are also access readers are first configured hierarchically below the AMC access controllers of ACE servers in the Configuration Browser **Connections** menu. They must then be configured as enrollment readers in the dialog **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader** also. See *Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment, page 148* 

#### 6.3.1 Configuring a serial enrollment reader

To configure an enrollment card reader on a serial port, proceed as follows:

- 1. In the Configuration Browser, in the dialog **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader**, select the desired workstation from the **Workstations** pane.
- 2. Select the reader type from the combo-box **Reader type**
- 3. Specify the number of the **COM port** used.

훷 BIS Configuration Browser				
File Edit Extras Help				
<ul> <li>Detector types</li> <li>States</li> </ul>	Apply X Discard			BOSCH
ACE PIN codes	Workstations	Card reader		
ACE Card coding configu				_
ACE Card reader		Type:	BoschRdr	▼ Reach reader for Mifare Logic, Hitse
ACE Card definition	BoschRdr	Card usage default:	IBprRdr	Intus Bosch reader for Mifare, Legic, Hitag
ACE Custom fields		Serial number inverted:	RDR 7080AKF BOS	ProxPro Wiegand
			DELTA 1200 MF RS232 BKL DELTA 1200 HI1 RS232 BKL	DELTA 1200 MF RS232 BKL DELTA 1200 HIL RS232 BKL
		Reader functions:	DELTA 1200 LE RS232 BKL	DELTA 1200 LE RS232 BKL
			DELTA 1200 Prox RS232 BKL DELTA 1200 iClass RS232 BKL	DELTA 1200 Prox RS232 BKL DELTA 1200 iClass RS232 BKL
			DELTA 1200 LE BKL USB	DELTA 1200 LE BKL USB DELTA 1200 HIL BKL USB
		COM port:	DELTA 1200 MF BKL USB	DELTA 1200 MF BKL USB / Admitto ARD-EDMCV002-USB
			ARD 1200EM USB ARD EDMCV002 USB	ARD 1200EM USB Admitto Mifare Classic and DesFire EV1
		Baud rate:	PegaSys MF BC USB PegaSys MF SN USB	PegaSys Mifare USB Reader PenaSys Mifare USB Reader for SerialNumber
		Data bits:	PegaSys HITAG BC USB	PegaSys Hitag USB Reader
		Parity	PegaSys Legic BC USB	PegaSys Hitag USB Reader for SerialNumber PegaSys Legic USB Reader
		l uniy.	PegaSys Legic SN USB PegaSys Legic Advant BC USB	PegaSys Legic USB Reader for SerialNumber PenaSys Legic Advant USB Reader
		Stop bits:	PegaSys MF Desfire BC USB	PegaSys Mifare Desfire USB Reader
		Timeout:	Dialog	Dialog
			Papat to default	
Cocations				
Connections				
Infrastructure				
General settings				
Logging / Protocol				
Tools				
×				
🔒 BIS	Ready C:\MgtS\Customer_Configu	uration\ACE4.0 TU1		1

For the remaining data for each reader type the default parameter settings are usually sufficient.

For an up-to-date list of the reader types that can be selected from this dialog, consult the release notes for your ACE version.

In the Access Engine Person dialogs both directly connected readers such as these, and also access control readers connected via AMC controllers, can be used as enrollment readers by selecting them from combo-boxes next to the buttons **Reader...** and **Record card**.

#### 6.3.2 DELTA Readers with USB interface

#### Introduction

Readers with USB interfaces require virtual COM ports. Every reader delivered includes drivers for setting up virtual COM ports.

#### Procedure

- Execute the driver installation program for your DELTA reader, for example: PL-2303 Driver Installer.exe.
- 2. Connect the reader to the ACE workstation's USB port.
- Open the Device Manager program for your version of Windows, for example: Start > Settings > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Device Manager
- 4. From the list of device types unfold the node **Ports (COM & LPT)** and note the number of the COM port that was configured by the installation program, for example: **Prolific USB-to-Serial Comm Port (COM<number>)**



- 5. In the Configuration Browser go to **Infrastructure > ACE Card Reader** and enter the number you have just noted in the **COM Port** field.
- 6. Select the appropriate reader type choose from the pull-down list.

#### 6.3.3 RF IDeas Readers with USB interface

#### Introduction

Readers with USB interfaces require virtual COM ports. Every reader delivered includes drivers for setting up virtual COM ports. Proceed as follows:

- 1. Locate the appropriate drivers for the reader as per the manufacturer's instructions.
- 2. Connect the reader
- 3. The operating system should detect unknown hardware and automatically install it.
- 4. If automatic driver installation fails, manually install or re-install the driver via the Device Manager for your version of Windows, for example: **Start > Settings > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Device Manager**
- From the list of device types unfold the node Ports (COM & LPT) and note the number of the COM port that was configured by the installation program, for example: Prolific USBto-Serial Comm Port
- 6. In the Configuration Browser go to Infrastructure > ACE Card Reader and enter the number you have just noted in the COM Port field.
- 7. For **Reader type** choose the pull-down item **RW300** (for IClass readers) or **ProxPro** (for proximity readers).

## 6.3.4 Configuring a non-fingerprint reader for access control and enrollment

- 1. Ensure that the reader is connected to the reader's interface on an AMC.
  - In the Configuration Browser Connections > Connection servers > [your connection server] > AccessEngine, create within your device hierarchy an entrance with that reader.
  - 3. Click the **Apply** button to save your settings.
  - 4. In the Configuration Browser **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader**, select the workstation to for which the reader is to become an enrollment reader.
  - 5. Click the green plus 🕈 button to add a reader to the workstation.
  - 6. Select the reader type **Access reader** from the drop-down list. Note that this reader type can be used only once per workstation.
  - 7. Click the **Apply** button to save your settings.

#### 6.3.5 Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only

#### Introduction

For a general introduction to fingerprint readers, see *Fingerprint readers, page 152* 

#### Procedure

- 1. Connect the fingerprint reader to your network.
- 2. Run the **AccessIPConfig** tool (which has its own online help) to configure the network parameters of the fingerprint reader.
  - Click the Scan for fingerprint readers button
  - Double-click the desired fingerprint reader in the list
  - Click the **Set IP...** icon
  - In the **Set IP address** dialog, select reader type **Enrollment reader**, and select the appropriate **Card Type** for your ACE installation.
  - Carefully note the IP address for use later in this procedure
- 3. In the Configuration Browser, navigate to **Infrastructure** > **ACE Card reader**, select the workstation to which the fingerprint reader is attached.
- 4. Click the green plus 🕈 button to add a reader to the workstation.

- 5. Select the fingerprint reader in the device tree. Note that each reader type can be used only once per workstation.
- Enter the IP address that you set for this reader in the AccessIPConfig tool.
   NOTE: If you changed the port number in the AccessIPConfig tool, ensure that you set the same port number here also.
- 7. Click the **Apply** button to save your settings.

#### **Registering a duress finger**

When recording fingerprints for cardholders it is possible to define a finger that a cardholder can use if placed under duress. Use of this "duress finger" at the fingerprint reader will then trigger a silent alarm in the system. See the ACE Operation Guide for details.

#### **Refer to**

– Fingerprint readers, page 152

#### 6.3.6 ACE operator login via enrollment reader

#### Introduction

For additional security, ACE operators can be configured in so that they can only enter the ACE client interface by presenting their cards at the enrollment reader connected to that server.

#### Procedure

1. In the Configuration Browser, locate the enrollment readers configured for an ACE server by clicking **Infrastructure > ACE Card reader**.

#### Notice!

If multiple enrollment readers are configured on the same ACE server.

For logging in to the ACE client uses the enrollment reader that was configured first, i.e. the uppermost in the list.

In order to configure a different enrollment reader for ACE login, remove any readers that are above it until the desired reader is uppermost. Any reader that you remove can be added again later, if required.

2. In the following example the reader intended for login is **PegaSys MF Desfire BC USB**:

Bin Edit Estras Belo Stream Anno Anno Anno Anno Anno Anno Anno Ann	🖨 возсн
Detector types     V Apply     X Discard	🗑 BOSCH
States	
Card reader	
ACE Card coding configu.	
ACE Card reader	
ACE Card definition PegaSys MF Destre BC USB Card usage default:  Personal card  Card used for pers -	
ACE Custom fields RC3/1024US1 Serial number inverted:	
DELTA 1200 Klass RS232 BKL Reader functions: DeanGue	
Windog	
PegaSys MF Desfire BC USB	
COMmert D	
Baud rate: 9000	
Data bits:	
Party U. V.	
Stop bits:  1	
Timeout: 100	
Benat to default	

3. Go to Administration > ACE Workstations and select the check box Login via reader:

📚 BIS Configuration Browser			_(_) ×
Elle Edit Extras Help			
License	🖌 Apply 🗙 D	iscard	BOSCH
1 Information	+ 28 🎜 🗙		
Authorizations		Workstation	
Operators	AC3X0019U51		
ACE Licenses	AC3X1024U51	Name: AC3k0019US1	
ACE User profiles		Description: WS - US	
ACE Workstation profiles			
ACE Workstation rights		<u>×</u>	
ACE Workstations		Login via reader: 🔽	
		Automatic Logout after: 0 Seconds	
Administration			

- 4. The cardholder who is to log in to ACE via the enrollment reader needs to be associated with an ACE operator. The procedure to do this is described in the section **2-Factor Authentication**.
- Save and reload the configuration, restart the ACE client. The cardholder can now log onto ACE only by presenting his card to the enrollment reader.

#### **Refer to**

- 2-Factor Authentication, page 19

## 6.4 Configuring PIN Codes

#### **Dialog path**

#### Main menu > Configuration > Options > PIN codes

BIS Configuration Browser > Infrastructure > ACE PIN codes

This dialog sets system-wide parameters for both kinds of PIN code:

- Verification PIN
- Identification PIN

8	BI	S Configuration Browser
File Edit Extras Help		
Detector types	Apply 🕱 Discard	
States		
Reference ACE PIN codes	PIN code configuration	
ACE Card coding configu	Allowed number of PIN code trials:	β
ACE Card reader	PIN code length:	C 4
ACE Card definition		• •
ACE Custom fields	separate IDS-PIN:	
	Identification PIN code configuration	
	PIN code length:	8 4
-0		
Administration		
Cocations		
Connections		
Infrastructure		

#### **PIN code parameters**

#### **Allowed Number of PIN Code Trials**

The number in this field (3 by default) defines the allowable number of attempts to enter a PIN at a keypad reader (possible values: 1 to 10). Cardholders who do not enter the correct PIN code within the specified number of attempts are blocked system-wide, even at card readers that do not require PINs.

You can only clear this block by using the **Blocking** dialog at an Access Engine workstation.

#### **PIN Code Length**

This text box sets the length of all verification PINs throughout the system. The range of valid values is 4 to 9 (6 by default).

# i)

Notice!

Do not change the setting **PIN code length** while the system is running. This would lead to all assigned PIN codes becoming invalid and needing to be recreated.

#### Separate IDS PIN

If no separate IDS PIN is set, then a verification PIN can be used to arm the IDS. Only if the check box is selected do the input fields for the arming-PIN become editable in the **Cards** dialog. When the IDS PIN is set the verification PIN can no longer be used to arm the IDS.

#### Identification PIN code configuration:

This text box sets the length of all Identification PINs for use with the feature **Access by PIN alone**. The range of valid values is 4 to 8 (8 by default).

#### Additional steps for configuring Identification PINs for Wiegand and OSDP readers

If and only if you are using Identification PINs on Wiegand or OSDP readers, perform the following steps.

- 1. In the Configuration Browser, navigate to Infrastructure > ACE Card definitions.
- 2. Select Input mode, with Description Manual input in the Available card types pane.
- 3. Use the arrow button to transfer it to the Active Card types pane.
- 4. Click the **Apply** button.

lame	Number of	Description		Name	Number of	Description
ID 26	26	Standard Wiegand 26 bit	<	32 bit CSN	32	Standard Mifare (32 bit)
nput mode	64	Manual input		HID 37	37	HID 37 bit code, CN-H10
			>	HID 35	35	HID corporate 1000
				Serial readers (AMC2 4R4	64	Serial readers (AMC2 4R4.
				EM 26	26	EM 26 Bit Code
				Bosch code	63	Bosch code data record (
				Input mode	64	Manual input

#### Figure 6.1:

Notice!



If you transfer **Manual input** to the **Active Card types** then LBUS and BG900 protocols will no longer work.

## 6.5 Fingerprint readers

#### **Configuration using the AccessIPConfig tool**

All fingerprint readers must be set up in the **AccessIPConfig** tool before they can be configured in the Configuration browser. Consult the tool's own online help for details of usage.

#### Notice!

Discovering devices on the network

The tool only finds devices on the subnet where it is running. If the scan results do not include the device you require, try running the tool in the subnet of the devices, or use the Windows *arp* command to associate an IP address with physical Ethernet (MAC) address of the device.

arp -s <IP address> <physical Ethernet (MAC) address>

Start the AccessIPConfig tool from the Configuration browser: Tools menu > ACE Configuration and fingerprint devices, or directly from the file system: MgtS\AccessEngine\AC\Bin\AccessIPConfig.exe

#### Reconfiguring a fingerprint reader that is already in use

A fingerprint reader that is already in use cannot be configured in the **AccessIPConfig** tool. This is indicated by a yellow warning triangle next to the icon of fingerprint reader in the **Network name** column in the tool.

To put the reader out of use without disconnecting it from the network, proceed as follows:

- Locate the reader in the Configuration Browser > Connections > Connection servers >
  [your connection server] > AccessEngine, > tab:Device data > (find the fingerprint reader
  below its entrance in the device tree) > tab:Network & Operation modes
- 2. Set an invalid IP address, that is, one that is **not** currently displayed in the **AccessIPConfig** tool.
- 3. Click or the **Apply** button to save.
- 4. In the AccessIPConfig tool, click the Scan fingerprint readers button to refresh the list. The yellow warning triangle will have disappeared from the reader's icon. Now you can proceed to reconfigure the reader in the tool.

Afterwards, remember to set the correct address again in the Configuration Browser.

i	

#### Notice!

Fingerprint reader -- single channel

A fingerprint reader has only one channel, which at any one time can be used either for selfconfiguration (via the **AccessIPConfig** tool), or for access control or for enrollment. It can perform multiple tasks sequentially but not simultaneously.

6.5.1

#### Configuring a fingerprint reader for access control

#### Introduction

As of ACE Version 4.6 fingerprint readers can be used for access control in different operation modes, depending on whether the reader is currently online or offline.

**Online:** Fingerprint templates are stored on the DMS server and downloaded to the devices temporarily whenever required.

- **Offline:** Fingerprint templates are continually updated on the fingerprint reader while it is online, in order to enable access control even when the reader is offline.
  - The capacity of a fingerprint reader to store fingerprint data is limited. For the current maximum number of users, consult the datasheet corresponding to your version of Access Engine.
  - Which of the offline options is used (Fingerprint only, Card only or Card and fingerprint) may be determined either by the stored properties of the cardholder, or by those of the reader. The reader parameter Person-dependent verification must be selected for the offline option in the cardholder properties to take effect.

#### Prerequisites

 Persons authorized for access by Fingerprint only must nevertheless have cards. This is because the fingerprint reader transmits only card data to the system when it recognizes the cardholder's fingerprint.

If fingerprint readers are used, then at least two are necessary in any configuration:

- First configure a fingerprint reader as an enrollment reader, to record fingerprints and cards for the ACE system. See *Configuring a fingerprint reader for enrollment use only, page 148*
- After that, configure at least one for access control at an entrance. Follow the procedure below.

Note that the procedure for recording cardholders' fingerprints is described in the ACE operation help.

#### Procedure

- 1. Connect the fingerprint reader to your network.
- 2. Run the **AccessIPConfig** tool (which has its own online help) in the same subnet as the fingerprint reader to configure its network parameters.
  - Click Scan fingerprint readers to get a list of readers available on the network
  - Click Set IP...
  - In the Set IP address dialog, select reader type Access reader, and select the appropriate Card Type for your ACE installation.
  - Carefully note the IP address for use later in this procedure
- 3. If the ACE client is running, close it.
- In the Configuration Browser Connections > Connection servers > [your connection server] > AccessEngine, create within your device hierarchy an entrance with fingerprint readers.
- 5. Select your fingerprint reader in the device tree.
- 6. On the **Network & Operation modes** tab in the main dialog pane set the following parameters:

Network	IP address	The IP address that is set for this reader in the <b>AccessIPConfig</b> tool
	Port	Use the default port 51211 for all fingerprint readers
-	The following	parameter options are mutually exclusive (radio buttons)
Fingerprint	Card only	The card scanner, not fingerprint scanner, in the reader is used.
templates on server	Card and fingerprint	Verifies that the person using an access card is really its owner, by scanning both card and fingerprint.

(Online mode)		
Fingerprint templates on device (Offline mode)	Person - dependent verification	The identification mode of the fingerprint reader is read from the settings given to the individual cardholder in the ACE client <b>Personnel data &gt; Persons &gt;</b> tab: <b>Fingerprints.</b> The mode set there will be one of the three following options.
	Fingerprint only	Only the fingerprint scanner in the reader is used
	Card only	Only the card scanner in the reader is used.
	Card and fingerprint	Both the fingerprint and the card scanner are used, to verify that the person using the access card is really its owner.

## 6.6 Palm vein readers

#### **Biometric verification**

Biometric verification means allowing a cardholder to enter only after they present biometric proof that they are the true owner of the ID card (or equivalent credential).

At least 2 biometric readers must be configured in the system, before biometric ID verification can be profitably used:

- A reader connected to an operator workstation for enrollment of biometric data.
- One or more readers at entrances to verify the identities of cardholders.

#### Prerequisites:

- The palm vein reader is licensed and configured in the software of the manufacturer. You have defined the following:
  - IP address of the reader
  - Reader ID (1 or 2) to distinguish between readers on the same biometric controller.
- You have carefully noted the reader's password, as provided by the installer of the reader.

## Configuring the palm vein reader on an operator workstation Dialog path

- BIS configuration browser > Infrastructure > ACE Card reader

#### Procedure

- 1. In the **Workstations** pane, select the workstation to which you want to connect the palm vein reader.
- 2. In the **Workstations** pane, click the green plus icon.
- 3. In the **Card reader** pane, enter the following data:
- **Type:** Select **Palm vein sensor** from the drop-down list.
- **IP address:** Enter the IP address of the palm vein reader controller.
- **Reader ID:** Select the palm vein reader ID from the drop-down list.
- **Password:** Enter the password that has been provided by the installer of the reader.
- 4. Click **Apply** to apply and save the changes, or click **Discard** to cancel the changes.

#### Creating a biometric controller in the device tree Dialog path

- BIS Configuration Browser > **Connections** 

#### Procedure

- 1. On the **Device data** tab, right-click a MAC device and select **New biometric controller** from the context menu.
- 2. In the PCS controller dialog, enter the required data:
- **Name**: Enter the name of the controller.
- **Description**: Enter a description.
- **IP address**: Enter the IP address of the palm vein reader controller.
- 3. Click **Apply**, to apply and save the changes, or click **Discard** to cancel or remove the applied changes.

#### Adding a palm vein reader to a biometric controller

- 1. On the **Device data** tab, expand the device tree, right-click a **PCS controller device** and select **New palm vein reader** from the context menu.
- 2. In the PCS palm vein dialog, enter the required data:
- **Name:** Enter the name of the palm vein reader.
- **Description:** Enter a description (optional).
- **Division:** Select a division.
- **Reader terminal / bus address:** Enter the reader ID, 1 or 2.
- **Number of retries**: Enter the maximum number of attempts allowed.
- **Password:** Enter the password that has been provided by the installer of the reader.
- 3. Click **Apply**, to apply and save the changes, or

click **Discard** to cancel or remove the applied changes.

## 6.7 Office mode

#### Introduction

The term Office mode describes the suspension of access control at an entrance during office or business hours. The entrance remains unlocked for these hours, to allow unhindered public access. Outside of these hours Normal mode applies, that is, access is granted only to persons who present valid credentials at the reader.

Office mode is a typical requirement of retail, educational and medical facilities.

#### Prerequisites

For office mode to operate, the following requirements must be met:

#### In the configuration (device tree)

- One or more entrances must be configured to allow extended unlocked periods.
- At least one keypad reader must be used at the entrance.

#### In the client (Persons dialogs)

- One or more cardholders must be authorized to put the entrance in and out of office mode.
- Their cards must be valid and allow access to the entrance outside of office mode hours.

#### 6.7.1 Configuring an entrance for office mode

#### Procedure

In the Configuration Browser

- 1. Navigate to Connections > Connection servers > [your connection server] > AccessEngine
- 2. Create within your device hierarchy an entrance with at least one keypad reader.
- 3. Select the keypad reader
- 4. On the **Door control** tab, select the check box **Office mode**
- 5. Click the **Apply** button

#### 6.7.2 Authorizing and instructing cardholders to set office mode

The procedures for authorizing cards to set office mode, and for starting and stopping office mode at a keypad reader, are described in the ACE operation help. Search for **Office mode**.

## 6.8 Custom Fields for personnel data

#### Introduction

Data fields for personnel are customizable in many ways:

- Whether they are **Visible**, that is, whether they are displayed in the client at all
- Whether they are **Required**, that is whether a data record can be stored without valid data in the field
- Whether the values they contain must be kept **Unique** within the system
- What data type they contain (text, date-time, integer etc.)
- Where (on which tab, in which column and in which row) in the client they will appear
- How large they will appear
- Whether and where the data will be used in standard reports

It is of course still possible to define entirely new data fields with all the attributes listed here.

#### 6.8.1 Previewing and editing Custom fields

#### Dialog path

In the Configuration Browser, navigate to the Infrastructure menu > ACE Custom fields
 The main window is divided into two tabs

- Overview This tab and its sub tabs (Address, Contact, Additional person data, Additional Company data, Remarks, Card Control and Extra Info) are read-only, and contain a roughly WYSIWYG overview of which data will appear on which tabs in the client software.
- **Details** This tab contains a list of editors, one for each predefined or user-defined data field.

#### Previewing

To preview in the Configuration Browser the effect of any change made in the **Details** tab, click the **Apply** button and go to the **Overview** tab.

To see in the ACE Client the effect of these changes, click the **Apply** button and open the relevant dialog in the ACE client. It is not necessary to reload the configuration or to restart the ACE client. However, if the modified dialog is currently open in the ACE client, it will be necessary to close and reopen that dialog.

#### Editing existing data fields

On the **Custom fields** > **Details** tab each data field, predefined or user-defined, has its own editor window where its attributes can be modified.

Click in the editor of the field that you wish to modify. The active editor will be highlighted.

Label:	My box		- Posit	ion Column: 1 🖨	Dimension Columns: 1
Field type:	Combo box 🗸 🗸	. Display in: Tab: Extra info	~	Row: 3 🚔	Rows: 1 🖨
Visible:	✓	Required:	Wie	tth (percent): 100 🜩	
Use in reports:					
Value list:	Maximum Medium Minimum		<		

The editable attributes of custom fields are explained in the following table.

Label text	Description
Label	<b>Label</b> is the label of the data field as it appears in the client. It can be freely overwritten to reflect the terminology used on your site.
Field type	<ul> <li>Field type is the type of the data, and determines the dialog control that the operator will use to make entries in the client. Each field type provides consistency checks for its particular input values, to ensure valid dates, times, text lengths and numerical limits.</li> <li>Text field <ul> <li>Click the ellipsis button next to it to specify the number of characters allowed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Check box <ul> <li>Date field</li> <li>Time</li> </ul> </li> <li>Date-time field</li> <li>Combo box <ul> <li>Enter the valid values for your combo box in the text field provided. Separate them with commas or carriage returns.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Numerical input <ul> <li>Enter your minimum and maximum values for the numerical input in the spin boxes provided.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Building control 1 and Building control 2 <ul> <li>These are special controls that can be relabeled here (in the Label field) and linked to commands in the client UI. Thus you can give specific users permission, via their cards, to perform special operations within the site. Examples of such operations are the turning on of floodlights or the control of special equipment.</li> </ul></li></ul>
Visible	Clear this check box to prevent the data field from appearing in the client.
Unique	Select this check box to ensure the uniqueness of values entered in this field. The system then rejects the input of any value that has already been stored for this field in the database. For example, personnel numbers should be unique to persons, and license plates to vehicles.
	The green light means that the data field is <b>not</b> currently used in the database. The red light means that the data field is currently used in the database.
Display in	Use this drop-down list to select the client tab on which the data field should appear.

Label text	Description
Required	Select this check box to make the data field mandatory. For example, a surname is required for each personnel record. Without a surname the data record can not be stored. Note that the editor will not allow a required data field to be set invisible via the <b>Visible</b> check box. For ease of use in the client it is highly recommended that all required fields be placed on the first tab.
Position	Use the spin boxes for <b>Column</b> and <b>Row</b> to position the data field on the tab named in the <b>Display in</b> drop-down list. Note that the editor will not allow you to select a position that is already in use, or to overlay existing data fields. Use the <b>Width (percent)</b> spin box to set the size of certain resizable controls, such as text fields. 100% means that the control will occupy all of the slot that is not already occupied by the data-field label.
Dimension	Use the spin boxes for <b>Column</b> and <b>Row</b> to specify the number of columns and rows to be occupied on the tab named in the <b>Display in</b> drop-down list. Note that the editor will not allow you to overlay existing data fields.

#### Creating and editing new data fields

On the **Custom fields** > **Details** tab each data field, predefined or user-defined, has its own editor pane where its attributes can be modified.

Click the **New field** button to create a new custom field with its own editor. The active editor pane will be highlighted.

The editor has the same dialog controls for editing existing data fields, see the table above, plus two extra:

<b>Use in reports</b> (check box)	Select this check box to enable the new data field to appear in standard reports.
<b>Sequence number</b> (spin box)	The sequence number determines the column that the data field will occupy in standard reports.



#### Notice!

Only sequence numbers 1..10 are currently addressable by **Badge Designer** and **Reports**.

## 6.8.2 Rules for data fields

- Location of data fields
  - Each field can only appear on one tab.
  - Each custom field can appear on any selectable tab.
  - Fields can be moved to other tabs by changing the entry in the **Display in** pull-down list.
- The label can contain any text: maximum length 20 characters.
- The custom text fields can contain any text: maximum length 2000 characters.
- Any field can be made a required field, but its **Visible** check box must be selected.

í

#### Notice!

Urgent recommendations before productive use

Agree and finalize the field types and their usage before using them to store persons' data: Each data entry field is assigned to a specific database field so that data can be located both manually and by report generators. Once data records from custom fields have been stored in the database, then these fields can no longer be moved or changed without risking data loss.

## 6.9 Audit Trail

The Audit Trail Report uses the system log of the ACE to select the safety relevant events of the last n days. As the amount of data can increase very quickly, the installation default is 30 days.

The number of days can be modified in the registry key: *HKLM\Software\Wow6432Node* \*Micos\SPS\Default\Loggifier\SysKeep\@value* 

Restart the Access Engine after any changes in the configuration

#### Calculation of event space:

Every event is stored in the system data log of the AccessEngine. Individual events are e.g.:

- door open,
- access,
- dialog start,
- personal single data change from dialog,
- import



#### Notice!

Each event needs a maximum of 8KB disk space (usually only 1-4 KB) Normal systems need only up to one 100MB file per day. If you import very much data (> 10.000), you need a multiple of 100 MB files per day (the files are automatically generated by ACE if needed).

It is possible to backup the older files from the directory ...  $MgtS \land Ccess Engine \land AC \land LgfLog \land$  and copy them only for the Audit Log Report (after midnight the older files will be deleted again).

Roughly 3-5 GB of disk space are required on average for 30 days of operation. For a more accurate estimate, observe the disk space used over a typical cycle of normal operation, and extrapolate from this for the required period.

## 7 Configuring Threat Level Management

#### Introduction

The goal of threat level management is to respond effectively to emergency situations by making an instant change to the behavior of entrances throughout the affected area.

## 7.1 Concepts of Threat Level Management

- A Threat is a critical situation that requires an immediate and simultaneous response from some or all entrances in an access control system.
- A Threat level is the system's response to a foreseen situation. Each threat level must be carefully configured so that each of the MAC's entrances knows how to respond.
   Threat levels are completely customizable, for instance, typical high threat levels might be configured as follows:
  - Lockout: Only first responders, with high security levels, can enter.
  - **Lockdown**: All doors are locked. Both ingress and egress are denied to all credentials below a configured security level.
  - **Evacuation**: All exit doors are unlocked.
- Typical low threat levels might be configured as follows:
  - **Sports event**: Doors to sports areas are unlocked, all other areas are secured.
  - **Parents' evening**: Only selected classrooms and main entrance are accessible.
- A Threat alert is an alarm that triggers a threat level. Suitably authorized persons can trigger a threat alert with a momentary action, for example through the operator's UI, through a hardware signal (e.g. push button), or by presenting a special alert card at any reader.
- A Security level is an attribute of cardholders' and readers' Security profiles, expressed as an integer 0..100. Each threat level sets the readers of its Main Access Controller (MAC) to the appointed security levels. Then those readers grant access only to credentials of persons with an equal or greater security level in their security profiles.
- A Security profile is a collection of attributes that can be assigned to a Person type (Person security profile), to a door (Door security profile), or to a reader (Reader security profile). Security profiles govern the following access control behaviors:
  - Security level, as defined above, for person type, door or reader
  - Screening rate. The percentage probability that random screening will be triggered by this person type or reader.

## 7.2 Overview of the configuration process

Threat Level Management requires the following configuration steps, which are explained in detail after this overview

- 1. In the Device Editor
  - Define threat levels
  - Define Door security profiles
  - Define Reader security profiles
  - Assign Door security profiles to entrances
- 2. In the System data dialogs
  - Define Person security profiles
  - Assign Person security profiles to Person types
- 3. In the Personnel data dialogs
  - Assign Person types to Persons
  - Assign Person types to Groups of persons

When threat level management has been successfully configured, alarms and the device states of the MAC can be monitored and controlled from the Map view application. See the Map view online help for details.

## 7.3 Configuration steps in the device editor

This section describes the prerequisite configuration steps that are required in the device editor.

#### Notice!

Device data cannot be modified in the device editor while a threat level is in operation.

#### 7.3.1 Creating a threat level

This section describes how to create threat levels for use at your site. Up to 15 may be created.

#### **Dialog path**

#### BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Procedure

- 1. Select sub-tab Threat levels
  - The Threat levels table appears. It may contain up to 15 threat levels, each with a name, a description and a check box with which to activate the threat level after it has been configured.
- 2. Click the line that reads **Please enter a name for the threat level**
- 3. Enter a name that will be meaningful to the system operators.
- 4. (optional) In the **Description** column, enter a fuller description of how the entrances will behave when this threat level is in operation.
- 5. Do **not** select the **Active** check box at this time. First complete all the other configuration steps for this threat level, as described in the following sections.

6. Click  $\square$  (Save) to save the new threat level.

#### 7.3.2 Creating a Door security profile

This section describes how to create security profiles for different types of door, and to define the state to which all doors of this profile will switch when a threat level comes into operation.

#### Dialog path

#### - BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Prerequisites

- At least one threat level has been defined
- At least one entrance has been configured in the device tree.

#### Procedure

- 1. Select sub-tab Door security profiles
  - The main dialog window divides into 2 panes: Selection and Door security profile (default name)
- 2. Click New

- A new Door security profile is created with a default name
- The **Threat level** table in the **Door security profile** pane becomes populated with the threat levels that have already been created, along with a value of **undefined** for each in the **State** column.
- 3. In the **Door security profile** pane, enter a name for the type of door to which this profile will be assigned.
  - The new profile name appears in the **Selection** pane. If desired it can be deleted from the configuration by clicking **Delete** in that pane.
- 4. (Optional) Enter a description of the profile, to help operators assign the profile correctly.
- 5. If this profile is to be assigned to turnstiles, select the **Turnstile** check box.
  - This will provide extra options for the target state of the door at different threat levels, for instance, the options to permit ingress or egress alone, or both together.
- 6. In the **State** column of the **Threat level** table, for each threat level select a suitable target state, for all doors of this profile, whenever that threat level is triggered.

Repeat the procedure to create as many Door security profiles as there are types of door in your configuration. Typical door types might be:

- Main public door
- Evacuation access to outside
- Access to classrooms
- Public access to sports arena

#### 7.3.3 Creating a Reader security profile

This section describes how to create security profiles for different types of reader. Reader security profiles define the following reader attributes **for each threat level**:

- The minimum security level required by a credential to gain access at the reader.
- The screening rate, that is, the percentage of cardholders that will be selected randomly for extra security screening.
  - Note: a screening rate that is set in a reader security profile overrides a screening rate set on the reader itself.

#### **Dialog path**

- BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Prerequisites

- At least one threat level has been defined
- At least one entrance has been configured in the device tree.

#### Procedure

- 1. Select sub-tab Reader security profiles
  - The main dialog window divides into 2 panes: **Selection** and **Reader security profile** (default name)
- 2. Click New
  - A new Reader security profile is created with a default name
  - The **Threat level** table in the **Reader security profile** pane becomes populated with the threat levels that have already been created, along with a default value of **0** for each in the **Security level** and the **Screening rate** columns.
- 3. In the **Reader security profile** pane, enter a name for the type of reader to which this profile will be assigned.

- The new profile name appears in the **Selection** pane. If desired it can be deleted from the configuration by clicking **Delete** in that pane.
- 4. (Optional) Enter a description of the profile, to help operators assign the profile correctly.
- 5. In the **Security level** column of the **Threat level** table, for each threat level, select a minimum security level (integer 0..100) that an operator must have in order to operate a reader of this profile whenever that threat level is triggered.
- 6. In the **Screening rate** column of the **Threat level** table, for each threat level select the percentage of cardholders that will be selected randomly by the reader for extra security checks whenever that threat level is triggered.

#### 7.3.4 Assigning door and reader security profiles to entrances

This section describes how to assign the door and reader security profiles to the doors and readers at particular entrances.

The first sub-procedure is to identify and filter out the set of entrances that you want to assign, and the second sub-procedure is to make the assignments.

In addition you can preview the states, security levels and screening rates of the selected entrances as they would be set by the various threat levels that you have defined.

#### Dialog path

#### BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Prerequisites

- At least one threat level has been defined
- At least one entrance has been configured in the device tree.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the device tree select the **DMS** (the root of the device tree)
- 2. In the main dialog pane, select the tab Threat level management
  - The main dialog pane receives several sub-tabs.
- Sub-procedure 1: Selecting entrances for assignment
- 1. Select sub-tab Entrances
  - The main dialog window divides into 2 panes: **Filter conditions** and a table of all the entrances that have been created in the system so far.
- 2. (Optional) In the **Filter conditions** pane enter criteria to restrict the set of entrances that appear in the table in lower half of the dialog, for example:
  - Select or clear the check boxes that determine whether Inbound readers, Outbound readers and/or Doors should appear in the table.
  - Enter strings of characters that must appear in the names of the entrances, areas, profile names or reader names of all entrances listed in the table.
  - Select or clear the check box that determines whether doors and readers that are not yet configured should also appear in the table
- 3. Click **Apply filter** to filter the Entrances list, or

**Reset filter** to set the filter controls back to their default values.

#### Sub-procedure 2: Assigning security profiles to the selected entrances

Prerequisite: The entrances to be assigned have been identified and appear in the table in the lower half of the dialog.

Note that each entrance consists typically of a door or barrier plus one or more card readers. However, some specialized entrance types such as **Assembly points** may lack these.

- 1. In the column **Door or reader security profile**, click the cell corresponding to the door or reader you wish to assign.
- 2. Select a door or reader security profile from the cell's drop-down list.

#### (Optional) Previewing the behavior of doors and readers at threat levels

The columns on the right hand side of the table are read-only. They show what the lock status (**Mode**), **Security level** and **Screening rate** of the doors and readers in the table would be if the threat level selected in the **Select threat level for details** list were in operation. Prerequisite: The entrances that you wish to preview have been identified and appear in the table in the lower half of the dialog.

- From the list **Select threat level for details** select the threat level that you wish to preview.
- ✓ The table displays the lock status (Mode) of the doors, and the Security level and Screening rates of the readers, as they would be if the selected threat level were in operation.

#### 7.3.5 Assigning a threat level to a hardware signal

This section describes how to assign a hardware input signal to trigger or cancel a threat alert.

#### Dialog path

#### BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Prerequisites

- At least one threat level has been defined
- At least one entrance has been configured in the device tree.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the device tree select an **entrance** below the AMC controller whose input signals you want to assign.
- 2. In the main dialog window, select the **Terminals** tab.
  - The table of entrances and signals is displayed.
- 3. In the row of the signal that you want to assign, click the cell for **Input signal**.
  - The drop-down list contains a command Threat level: Deactivate plus
     a Threat level: <name> for each threat level that you have previously defined.
  - The command **Threat level: Deactivate** will cancel any threat level that is currently in operation.
- 4. Assign the commands to the desired input signals.



#### Notice!

Restriction for DM 15

Door model 15 (DIP/DOP) cannot currently be used to trigger a threat level.

7.4

## Configuration steps in System data dialogs

This section describes how to create **Person security profiles** and assign them to **Person types**.

#### 7.4.1 Creating a Person security profile

#### **Dialog path**

#### ACE client > System data > Person security profile

#### Prerequisites

Person security profiles require careful planning and specification in advance, as they will have important consequences for the functioning of the system in critical situations.

#### Procedure



- 1. If the dialog already contains data, click  $\square \oplus$  (New) to clear it.
- 2. Enter a name for the new profile in the text field Security profile name:
- 3. (Optional) Enter a description of the profile, to help operators assign the profile correctly.
- 4. Enter an integer between 0 and 100 in the **Security level** box.
  - Given that the cardholder is authorized to use an entrance, 100 is sufficient to gain access at any reader, even if its security level is also currently set to 100
  - Otherwise the security level in a cardholder's Person security profile must be equal to or greater than the current security level of the reader.
- 5. Enter an integer between 0 and 100 in the **Screening rate** box.
  - Note: The screening rate of the person profile is secondary to that of the reader profile. The table below describes the interplay between the two profile screening rates.

#### Interplay of screening rates for person and reader security profiles

Screening rate (%) in Reader security profile R	Screening rate (%) in Person security profile P	Person selected for extra security checks?
0	Any	No
100	Any	Yes
199	0	No
199	100	Yes
199	199	<b>Possibly</b> Probability = MAX(R,P)

#### 7.4.2

#### Assigning a Person security profile to a Person Type

#### Dialog path

ACE client > System data > Person Type

#### Procedure

Note: for historical reasons, Employee ID is here a synonym for Person type

- In either the Predefined employee IDs table, or the User-defined employee IDs table, select the cell in the Security profile name column that corresponds to the desired Person type.
- 2. Select a person security profile from the drop-down list.
  - Repeat this procedure for all person types that require a person security profile
- 3. Click (Save) to save your assignments

## 7.5 Configuration steps in Personnel data dialogs

This section describes how new **Person** records that are created in the system, receive a **Person security profile** through their **Person type**.

#### **Dialog paths**

- Main menu > Personnel data > Persons
- Main menu > Personnel data > Group of Persons

Note: for historical reasons, Employee ID is here a synonym for Person type

#### Procedure

All **Person** records created in the system must have a **Person type**.

- 1. Ensure that system operators assign only **Person types** that have been linked to a **Person security profile** in the dialog **Main menu > System data > Person Type**
- 2. For details on the linking of **Person security profiles** and the creation of **Person** records, click the following links.

#### **Refer to**

- Assigning a Person security profile to a Person Type, page 165

## 8 Integrating Otis Compass

#### Introduction

**Compass** is a Destination Management System from the Otis Elevator Company. Its function is to manage multiple banks of elevators, dispatching elevators to passengers so that they can reach their destinations as efficiently as possible. To provide the necessary data, passengers no longer simply press **Up** or **Down** keys, but request their destinations at card-reader, touch-screen or keypad terminals.

Integration with Bosch access control systems adds security. Based on their credentials and the time models in operation, passengers are transported to their home floors and other authorized destinations efficiently. The system will not accept requests for floors that are not in the passenger's authorization profiles, or at a time of day that is outside the current time model.

#### Hardware topology of a Compass system

The hardware of a Compass system is configured top-down as a 3-tier hierarchy underneath a single MAC in the Device Editor.

	First tier: (Otis Compass)
	The Destination management system. Each
🖻 🙀 Otis Compass	<b>Compass</b> system can govern up to 8 elevator
🔠 📅 Otis DES Group 2	groups (also known as elevator banks).
🖻 📅 Otis DES Group 1	Parameters: Overall number of floors,
Otis DET+0F	network addresses,
🛗 Otis DET+0R	port numbers and timeouts.
🛗 Otis DET+1F	
Otis DET+2F	Second tier: (Otis DES)
Otis DET+3F	Up to 8 elevator groups, each managed by a
Otis DET+4F	logical Destination Entry Server (DES)
Otis DET+5F	consisting of 1 or 2 physical devices
Otis DET+6F	consisting of 1 of 2 physical devices.
Otis DET+6R	<b>Parameters</b> , 1 group ID per elevator group
Otis DET+7F	1 ID address per DES
Otis DET-1F	The number of elevator dears for each floor
Otis DET-1R	The number of elevator doors for each noor,
Otis DET-2F	and the second
	whether they are publicly accessible.
The hierarchy above shows:	
An <b>Otis Compass</b> system on a dedicated MAC	Third tier: Otis DET
A single elevator group governed by one <b>DES</b>	The Destination Entry Terminals (DET)
A number of terminals ( <b>DET</b> ), each with a	<b>Parameters</b> : 1 IP address per terminal.
floor number from -2 to +7, and F or R	Reachable destination floors.
referring to Front or Rear doors.	Doors for each terminal

#### Overview of integration in the access control system

Administrators of the access control system integrate Compass in the following stages, described in detail later in the chapter:

1. Configure the Compass hardware upon a single MAC in the Device Editor.

- 2. Configure customized fields for Otis-specific cardholder properties such as home floor.
- 3. Create Authorization profiles that govern access to specific elevator destinations.
- 4. Assign authorization profiles to the appropriate cardholders (see the ACE operation guide for these standard procedures).

## 8.1 Configuring a Compass system in the Device Editor

This section describes the steps to configure an Otis Compass system in the device editor.

#### **Dialog path**

- BIS Configuration browser > Connections > Device data

#### Procedure for Tier 1: Setting up the Compass system

- 1. Select the desired MAC in the Device editor tree view
- 2. Right-click and select New Otis Compass. The properties page has 2 tabs.
  - Otis Compass
  - Floors
- 3. On the **Otis Compass** tab the most important parameters to set are
  - **Name** (the name that should appear in the device tree)
  - MAC IP-Address (the callback IP address for the Compass system, on a dedicated network card, through which the Compass system communicates with the MAC).
     NOTE: This is not the IP address of the MAC itself.
  - Division (if and only if Divisions are licensed and used in your installation)

Leave the rest of the parameters at their default values unless instructed to change them by expert technical support. They are briefly explained in the following table:

Parameter	Default value	Description
MC group address	234.46.30.7	IP address for the multicast group
MC port for DES/DER remote MC port for DES/DER local	48307 47307	Multicast ports
UDP port for DES/DER remote UDP port for DES/DER local	46303 45303	UDP ports for the DES and DER devices
UDP port for DET remote UDP port for DET local	45308 46308	UDP ports for the DES and DER devices
Multicast time-to-live (TTL)	5 seconds	
Heartbeat interval	1 second	The amount of time between heartbeat signals. These signals show other devices that a device is "alive", that is functioning
Max. number of missed heartbeats	3	The number of heartbeats that can be missed before a device is considered "dead" (no longer functioning)
Message timeout	1 second	
Message retries	3	

- 1. On the **Floors** tab, click **Modify range of floors**
- 2. Enter the numbers of the lowest and highest floors to be served by all the elevator banks of the Otis Compass system.
  - The maximum range is -127 to +127

#### Procedure for Tier 2: Setting up the elevator groups (DES devices) Introduction

A DES (Destination Entry Server) is the computer that manages an elevator group. If desired, two physical DES devices with separate IP addresses can be combined in a logical DES, with failover capability.

#### Creating DES devices in the device tree:

- 1. Select the desired Otis Compass in the Device editor tree view
- 2. Right-click and select **New Otis DES**. The properties page has 2 tabs:
  - **Otis DES** \_
  - Floors
- On the **Otis DES** tab set the following parameters: 3.
  - **Name**: the name that should appear in the device tree. Use a systematic naming scheme that will provide clear orientation for configurers of DES and DET devices later in the configuration process.
  - **Description:** (optional) a free-text description of the device.
  - Group: an integer from 1 to 10. Make this integer unique among all the elevator groups (designated by their DES devices) within this Otis Compass system. You will not be able to save your device edits if the same Group number has been used more than once.
  - 1st IP address: The IP address of this DES device.
  - 2nd IP address: If this DES has a redundant twin, enter its IP address here.
  - **Division** (if and only if Divisions are licensed and used in your installation)

On the **Floors** tab the floors defined for Tier 1 (the Compass system) are presented as a table of editable cells.

#### Example:

The example below shows the floors for a 10 floor elevator group, with front and rear doors, and publicly accessible ground and 6th floors.

OTIS DES Floors

Highest floor: 7 -2

Lowest floor:

Change floor range

Floor number	Name	Description	Front door	Front door publicly accessible	Rear door	Rear door publicly accessible	
7	VIP	CxO floor	<b>V</b>				
6	Restaurant	Public			<b>V</b>		]
5	Offices-4	Staff					
4	Offices-3	Staff					
3	Offices-2	Staff					
2	Offices-1	Staff					
1	Conference	Invited visitors					
0	Lobby	Public			<b>V</b>		]
-1	Maintenance	Restricted			<b>V</b>		]
-2	Servers	Restricted					

- 1. In the Front door column, select the check boxes of all floors where the elevator offers use of its front door.
- Select the check boxes similarly for the **Rear door** column, if applicable. 2.

- 3. For the column **Front door publicly accessible**, select the check boxes of those floors that are accessible to all elevator passengers without restriction.
- 4. Select the check boxes similarly for the **Rear door publicly accessible** column, if applicable.
- 5. (optional) Click **Change floor range** on this tab to further restrict the range of floors that was set at the **Otis Compass** level.
- 6. Overwrite the default names in the **Name** and **Description** columns with meaningful alternatives.

#### Procedure for Tier 3: Setting up the terminals (DET devices) Introduction:

A DET (also known as a DEC -- Destination Entry Computer) reads physical credentials or PIN codes. A DET can be located on a particular floor outside the front or rear door of an elevator, or inside the elevator cabin.

#### Creating DET devices in the device tree:

- 1. Select the desired Otis DES device in the Device editor tree view.
- 2. Right-click and select **New Otis terminal**.
  - A popup window **Create Otis terminals** appears
- 3. Enter the number of terminals that you wish to configure on this DES.
- Accept the default values, or enter new starting values for the four octets of its IP address.
  - For any octet, but typically for the 4th, select the check box Automatic increment if you wish the system to configure a unique IP address for each terminal by incrementing the octet.
- 5. Click OK.
  - The desired number of DET devices is created in the device tree.
  - Their IP addresses are incremented as determined in the previous step.

#### **Configuring DET devices**

The properties page for each DET has 2 tabs:

- Otis terminal
- Floors
- 1. On the **Otis terminal** tab set the following parameters:
  - **Name:** The name that should appear in the device tree
  - **Description** (optional) a free-text description of the device.
  - IP address The IP address of this DET device
  - Operational mode: 1...4

This determines how the terminal requests destinations from the elevator passenger, and passes the requests to the DES for validation. The following table gives details:

Op.	Description	Behavior
mode		
1	Default floor	(The default operational mode)
		The passenger presents their credential, or enters a PIN code. If the
		credential or PIN is valid, and the passenger makes no further input,
		then the DET requests from the DES the passenger's default or "home"
		floor.

Op. mode	Description	Behavior
		If the passenger enters a different destination floor, then the DET requests that destination from the DES.
2	Access to authorized floors	The passenger presents their credential, or enters a PIN code, then enters a destination floor. The DET requests that destination from the DES The access control system grants or denies access to the requested destination.
3	User entry of destination floor	The passenger enters a destination floor. If the destination is publicly accessible, then the DET requests the destination from the DES. Otherwise, the DET requests the passenger to present their credential for validation.
4	Default floor or User entry of destination floor.	The passenger presents their credential, or enters a PIN code. If the credential or PIN is valid, then the DET requests from the DES the passenger's default or "home" floor. Within a set timeout period the passenger may, override the selection of the default floor and choose a different destination.

- Audit records: Select this check box to record passenger inputs at this terminal for the event log.
- PIN code: Select this check box to allow the use of an identification PIN code at this terminal, in addition to physical credentials.
- **Time models:** Select this check box to allow time models to restrict the times when this terminal can be used.
- **Division** (if and only if Divisions are licensed and used in your installation)

On the **Floors** tab of the **Otis terminal** properties page, the floors that you defined for Tier 2 (the DES) are presented as a table of editable cells.

**Note:** The naming scheme defined for Tier 2 above should provide sufficient orientation. If not, we recommend saving your work and returning to Tier 2 to complete the naming scheme.

- 1. Select in turn each DET that you have just created in the device tree, and open the **Floors** tab.
  - The **Floors** table appears
- 2. In the **Front door** column, select the check box of every floor that is to be reachable from the current DET.
- 3. In the **Front door publicly accessible column**, select the check box of every front door that is to be publicly accessible, that is, without explicit authorization.
- 4. (optional) In the **Time model for front door** column, select a time model to restrict public access to the front door on that floor, if required. For example, the restaurant floor may be accessible only at certain times of the day.
- Redo the previous steps, if necessary, for the columns Rear door, Rear door publicly accessible and Time model for rear door.

#### Example:

The example below shows the floors for a 10 floor elevator group, with those floors and doors reachable from the front elevator door in the lobby. Access to the restaurant floor, both front and rear elevator doors, is restricted by a time model.

Sterminal Fl	oors							
Hig	nest floor:	7						
Lov	vest floor:	-2						
Change	e floor range							
oor number	Name	Front door	Front door publicly accessible	Time model for front door	Rear door	Rear door publicly accessible	Time model for rear door	Description
7	VIP	<b>_</b>						CxO floor
6	Restaurant	~	V	Mo Fr 07-17	<b>V</b>	<b>V</b>	Mo Fr 07-17	Public
5	Offices-4	<b>V</b>						Staff
4	Offices-3	<b>V</b>						Staff
3	Offices-2	<b>V</b>						Staff
2	Offices-1	<b>V</b>						Staff
1	Conference	<b>V</b>						Invited visitors
	Lobby							Public
0								Restricted
0	Maintenance	✓			1.4			Trees a needed

#### 8.2

# Configuring customized fields for Otis-specific properties of cardholders

#### Introduction

This section describes how to create those custom fields where an operator can enter the Otis-specific properties for a cardholder, in particular the cardholder's "home" or default destination. This "home" must be defined by **three coordinates**:

- 1. Elevator group,
- 2. Floor
- 3. Door

Note that when specifying a home floor for a cardholder in the access control system client, an operator must enter data in the same order: elevator group, floor, door. For this reason the three custom fields should be positioned in reading order, preferably top to bottom.

Click  $\boldsymbol{\mathsf{OK}}$  to confirm any popup reminders that you must create all three coordinates.

Define the 3 necessary custom fields, plus any special Otis options you require, to appear on the **Elevators** tab of the access-control client interface.

For general information about configuring custom fields, see the ACE/AMS Configuration help for **Custom fields for personnel data**.

#### **Dialog path**

BIS Configuration browser > Infrastructure > ACE Custom fields

#### Procedure

On the **Custom fields** property page, select the **Elevators** tab.

#### First coordinate: Elevator group

- 1. Double-click in a cell on the tab and click **Yes** to create a new input field.
- 2. From the **Field type** list, select **Otis DES selection**.
- 3. In the Label field, enter *Elevator* Group
- 4. From the **Display in** list, select *Tab:Elevators*
- 5. In the **Position** group, select a unique location on the **Elevators** tab, where this custom field is to appear.

#### Second coordinate: Home floor

- 1. Click New field, to create a new custom fields
- 2. From the **Field type** list, select **Home floor**.
- 3. In the Label field, enter Home floor
- 4. From the **Display in** list, select *Tab:Elevators*
- 5. In the **Position** group, select a unique location on the **Elevators** tab, where this custom field is to appear. For ease of use by system operators, it should be below the previous coordinate.

#### Third coordinate: Exit door

- 1. Click **New field**, to create a new custom fields
- 2. From the **Field type** list, select **Exit door**.
- 3. In the Label field, enter Exit door
- 4. From the **Display in** list, select Tab: Elevators
- 5. In the **Position** group, select a unique location on the **Elevators** tab, where this custom field is to appear. For ease of use by system operators, it should be below the previous coordinate.

#### Special Otis options for cardholders Introduction

Eight Otis-specific binary options are provided in accordance with standard Otis functionality. If defined as custom fields on the **Elevators** tab, they appear as check boxes on the **Elevator data** tab of cardholders in the **Persons** dialog (Main menu > **Personnel data** > **Persons**). They can then be selected and cleared by operators of the access control system

**Persons**). They can then be selected and cleared by operators of the access control system. Configure these options only as instructed by your Otis representative.

#### Procedure

- 1. Click New field, to create a new custom fields
- 2. From the **Field type** list, select **Otis options**.
- 3. In the **Label** field, enter your own label, for example *Otis flag* 1 or according to Otis documentation.
- 4. From the **Display in** list, select Tab: Elevators
- 5. From the **Function type** list, select one of the options from OTIS option 1 to OTIS option 8
- 6. In the **Position** group, select a unique location on the **Elevators** tab, where this check box is to appear.

## 8.3 Creating and configuring authorizations for Otis elevators

#### Introduction

This section describes how to include access rights for Otis elevator groups, floors and elevator doors in an **Authorization**.

**Authorizations** are assigned directly to cardholders or, more commonly, combined with other Authorizations into **Access profiles**, which are then assigned to cardholders.

#### Prerequisites

An Otis Compass system has been defined on a MAC in the device editor. It is complete with an elevator group (represented by its DES) and floor+door pairs (represented by their DETs).

#### **Dialog path**

Main menu > System data > Authorizations

#### Procedure

- 1. In the **Authorization name** field, enter the name of an existing Authorization, or click
  - -Ġ (New) to create a new Authorization.
- 2. In the **MAC** list, select the name of the MAC upon which the Otis Compass system has been created.
- 3. Click the **Otis elevator** tab
- 4. In the **Otis elevators** list, select the DES for the elevator group that you wish to add to the Authorization (Note that an Authorization can contain only one DES).
  - The floors of the selected elevator group are displayed in the **Floors** pane.
- 5. In the **Front door** and **Rear door** columns of the **Floors** pane, select the doors on those floors that are to be included in this Authorization.
  - Note that those floors and doors that were **not** selected for this elevator group, when it was defined in the device editor, will be grayed out and not selectable in this dialog.
- 6. Alternatively, click the buttons **Assign all floors** and **Remove all floors** to select or clear all floors and doors at once.
- 7. Click (Save) to save the Authorization.

## 9 Integrating a Kemas key cabinet

#### Introduction

The following section briefly describes the functionality of a Kemas key cabinet and how to integrate it with an existing Bosch ACE or AMS system.

#### Prerequisites

- A Kemas key cabinet is ready for use and its IP address is known.
- The Kemas key cabinet system supports readers that can read and write Bosch standard card encoding.

#### Functionality

- The system prevents personnel from leaving the premises before returning their keys to the assigned compartment in the Kemas key cabinet .
- The system creates an alarm with the state Access denied (key) if a person attempts to leave the premises and the key has not been returned.
- The system prevents personnel from leaving the premises if the connection to the Kemas key cabinet is interrupted.
- The system creates an alarm with the state Access denied (offline) if a person attempts to leave the premises while the connection to the Kemas key cabinet is interrupted.
- The system creates an alarm with the state Key cabinet offline if connection to the Kemas key cabinet is interrupted.

#### Limitations

The current version supports only one per ACE or AMS system Concurrent operation of a Kemas key cabinet with a Deister key cabinet is not supported.

#### Notice!

Data security risk

An unencrypted network connection (http) between ACE or AMS system and a key cabinet is a data-security risk. Ensure that all necessary measures are taken to protect the network traffic in the overall system from unauthorized access.

9.1

## Configuring Kemas within the access control system

#### **Creating BIS states for the key cabinet**

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Infrastructure > States
- 2. Create a new state list with the name Key cabinet
- 3. Create 4 new states, with the following texts (these are examples used throughout this document):
  - Access denied (key)
  - Access denied (offline)
  - Key cabinet online
  - Key cabinet offline

#### **Configuring BIS states for the reader**

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Infrastructure > Detector types > Access Engine > READER
- 2. Create two state mappings for READER. Note: case sensitive!

Reported state	State
0200003a	Access denied (offline)
02000037	Access denied (key)

#### Configuring BIS states for the key cabinet

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Infrastructure > Detector types > Access Engine > KEYCABINET
- 2. Create two state mappings for KEYCABINET. Note: case sensitive!

Reported state	State
0c000200	Key cabinet offline
0c000201	Key cabinet online

#### Configuring the Kemas key cabinet

- 1. In the BIS Configuration browser navigate to Tools > ACE key cabinet configuration
- 2. Click New
- 3. For the key cabinet type, select **Kemas**
- 4. Enter the name and the internet address of the key cabinet
- 5. Turn on the key cabinet
- 6. Click Save.

#### **Configuring the reader**

Readers that are to be connected to the Kemas key cabinet need to be configured in the Device editor.

- 1. In the BIS Configuration browser navigate to **Connections**
- 2. Select the desired reader in the Device editor tree view
- Open the properties page of that reader Select Check key return and then the Kemas key cabinet
- 4. To prevent the AMC from allowing egress without permission from the key cabinet, configure the following parameters. Click the **Door control** tab.
  - Enter a value > 0 for the parameter Waiting time for response
  - Clear the check box labeled **Open door if no answer from host**

#### Completing the configuration in BIS ACE

- 1. Load the modified configuration in BIS Manager
- 2. In the BIS Configuration Browser, navigate to Connections > Connection Servers > DMS
- 3. Right-click and select **Synchronize** from the context menu.

## 10 Integrating a Deister key cabinet

#### Introduction

The following section describes how to integrate a Deister key cabinet with an existing ACE system.

A key management system can consist of

- 1 key terminal with
- 1 or more **key cabinets**, where each cabinet contains
- 1 or more key panels, and each panel typically contains
- 8, 16 or 32 slots for **key tags**.

The minimum configuration is one terminal with one cabinet containing one key panel. A single ACE system can manage multiple key management systems, each with its own key terminal.

#### Preparing the hardware for installation

- 1. Start by physically assembling the Deister key management system including all panels, and inserting all key tags in their intended slots.
- 2. Connect the Deister key management system to the network.
- 3. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to **Tools** > **ACE Key Cabinet Configuration**
- Click the button Key Cabinet Configuration.
   Result: The Key Cabinet Configuration window appears.
- 5. Select the **Activated** check box and click **Save**.
  - ACE will connect to the terminal and configure all inserted keys automatically, avoiding the need to configure keys individually afterwards.
  - Note: Nevertheless the BIS ACE operator will be able to browse the key states and reconfigure the system after this initial configuration.
- 6. Follow the configuration procedure below.

#### **Configuration in the ACE software: Overview**

The integration of a Deister key management system in BIS Access Engine (BIS ACE) consists of three phases.

- In the BIS Configuration Browser: Entering the parameters of the key management system in BIS
- In the ACE client: Defining the names of keys and key groups
- In the ACE client: Granting to ACE cardholders permission to take selected keys from the Deister key cabinet.

#### Limitations

Before proceeding, consider the following limitations. If in doubt on the applicability of any point, please contact Bosch technical support through the proper channels.

- If a Deister key cabinet integration is used in ACE configurations where cardholders have multiple cards:
  - Only one access card can be used with the Deister key cabinet.
  - By default this is the first card listed in the ACE client dialog Personnel data > Cards for that user. A different card can be selected, but automatically never more than one card.
- The key cabinet cannot be opened during a re-synchronization of ACE and Deister cabinet data.

- The full re-synchronization of a Deister key cabinet with 2,000 users, after a break in network communication with ACE, can take around 10 minutes.
- Deister key cabinets are limited to 2,000 users and 64,000 key assignments.

i
---

## Notice!

Data security risk An unencrypted network connection (http) between ACE or AMS system and a key cabinet is a data-security risk. Ensure that all necessary measures are taken to protect the network traffic in the overall system from unauthorized access.

## **10.1 Configuring a new Deister system in ACE**

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to **Tools** > **ACE Key Cabinet Configuration**
- Click the button Key Cabinet Configuration.
   Result: The Key Cabinet Configuration window appears.
- 3. Click the **New** button
- 4. Select key cabinet type **Deister** in the popup window, and press **OK**

#### Parameter values for terminals

Enter parameter values for the terminal the terminal.
 NOTE: IP and Bus addresses can be read from the terminal display; see below How to read the terminal display.

Display name	A name for the terminal. This name is displayed in the list of terminals on the left hand side of the <b>Key Cabinet Configuration</b> dialog window.
IP-address	IP address of the terminal.
Port number	Enter 2101 for unencrypted or 2601 for encrypted communication
Bus address	Enter the bus address of the terminal
Division	(Only if using the Divisions feature of BIS ACE) Enter the BIS ACE division to which the terminal belongs. ACE operators can then view and use only the cabinets within their own divisions.

#### Parameter values for key panels and additional cabinets

Add key panels and cabinets (or racks) to the key management system. Note that the dialog window starts with an initial minimum configuration of one cabinet (or rack) and one panel, to which you may now add. Every cabinet requires at least one panel.

Repeat these procedures for all key panels and additional cabinets (or racks) that belong to this key management system:

In the text field labeled Rack name, enter a display name for the cabinet (there must always be at least one cabinet per system). This name will appear in the terminal display.

#### Key panels

The dialog always starts with one key panel within the cabinet, labeled with a sequential integer in a square box, e.g. [1].

1. To add further key panels to the same cabinet, click the **Add panel** button. New key panels will be labeled [2], [3] etc. automatically.

2. Enter values for the panel's parameters:

**NOTE**: Bus and Route addresses can be read from the terminal display; see the section below: **How to read the terminal display**.

Bus address	ddress The bus address of the terminal	
Route address	The route address of the panel. (This parameter is needed to release a specific key from ACE dialog System data > Keys)	
Туре	The type of the panel, e.g. FLEXX 16	

#### Key cabinets

 Click the [+] tab to add a new cabinet (rack) to the system. Give each a new Display name for the terminal display, and enter parameter values for each key panel in the new cabinet, as described above.

**NOTE:** Addresses can be read from the terminal display; see below How to read the terminal display.

- 2. When all cabinets and key panels have been added, select the Activated check box.
- 3. Click the **Save** button to save the definition of the Deister terminal in ACE.

## **10.2** How to read the terminal display

The following illustrations explain where to find the essential information in the terminal display.

Note that the layout of the terminal displays may vary from one firmware version or language to another. If in doubt, please consult the Deister handbook that was delivered with your Deister system.

- The startup screen shows the name of the terminal (1) on the first line:



- Click the terminal's green **Return** key to display the next screen



#	Description	Value on screen
2	Bus-address of terminal	21
3	Type of panel	FLEXX8
4	Route address of panel	25

Note: CAB 01/02 means that this is the first of two cabinets.

\_ If multiple cabinets are connected you can press the down-arrow button to get details about the next cabinets:



#	Description	Value on screen
2	Bus-address of terminal	21
3	Type of panel	FLEXX16
4	Route address of panel	26

#### Modifying an existing Deister system in ACE 10.3

To modify the settings of a Deister key cabinet, proceed as follows:

- In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Tools > ACE Key Cabinet Configuration 1.
- Click the button Key Cabinet Configuration. 2. Result: The Key Cabinet Configuration window appears.
  - Select the desired terminal from the Terminals list
- 3.
- Click the Edit button 4.
- Clear the **Activated** check box 5.
- 6. Click the Save button
- 7. Click the **Edit** button again
- 8. Modify the desired parameters.
  - For example: Under **Port no.** Enter 2601 for encrypted communication (the default value is 2101)
- 9. Select the **Activated** check box
- 10. Click the **Save** button to save the definition of the Deister terminal

# **Resetting a Deister key cabinet**

To reset a Deister key cabinet, that is to remove any previous settings, proceed as follows:

- 1. Click the **Reset** button
- 2. Clear the **Activated** check box
- 3. Click the **Save** button
- 4. Select the **Activated** check box again
- 5. Click the **Save** button again

**11 Distributed systems** 

# **11.1** ACE distributed Installation

For a distributed BIS-ACE installation:

- Install the BIS on the **first** machine.
- Install the ACE on the **second** machine.

# Installation of the BIS as a Server for the Access Engine

Start the BIS-ACE installation and select the packages as follows:

- Disable all other packages.
- Select **Access Engine** under the login server.
- Select the tools.

Continue with the installation. On this installation you will find:

- The BIS database
- The reporting database
- The BIS manager

# Installation of the OPC Servers

To install the OPC Servers (referring to the Engines like Access Engine and Automation Engine):

Select the package Door Controller.

Do **not** select any other features

Continue the installation. On this second installation you will find:

- The ACE services
- The ACE database

After the installation of the OPC Server, change to the BIS server machine to get the BIS-ACE parameterized and proceed as follows:

- Start the BIS Manager and login with BIS/BIS.
- Start the configuration.
- Create an Automation Engine configuration.
- Log onto this configuration.
- Activate demo mode.
- Navigate to Administration > Server structure
- Add the name of the host in which the OPC Server is installed as you can see below.

۵	BIS Configuration Browser	- 🗆 🗙
File Edit Extras Help		
2 License	V Apply 🔀 Discard	BOSCH
Server structure		0
Information		
Authorizations	Login server	
M Operators	Server name: AC3-ACE-WS2 Modify	
ACE Licenses		
ACE User profiles	After logon the server identifies to the client by	
ACE Workstation profiles	server name mapping to: AC3-ACE-WS2 Edit	
ACE Workstation rights	he ID address (second addition a Gouvelly	
ACE Workstations	the IP-address (recommended in using a newall):	
	Additional connection server	
	Server name New	
	TESTEN02B Rename	
	Delete	
	Client authentication method	
-0	BIS verifies authentication     O Windows verifies authentication	
Administration	Important	
	Selection of Windows authentication makes additional steps necessary, like the exchange of the login page. Please consult the online help for more detailed information.	
Locations	D-undwidth control of notwork	
Conneccions		
Infrastructure	Limit maximum transmission speed to: 1 Mbps V	
	Important Note: The maximum transmission rate applies to the entire system, and is shared between the logged in	
General settings	clients. Each client has a minimum of 128 Kbps bandwidth.	
	Considered are those clients only with Netimiter installed.	
Logging / Protocol		

 Navigate to **Connections** and add a new connection using the server name as illustrated below:

2	BIS Configuration Browser	- 🗆 🗙
File Edit Extras Help		
+ × °	🗸 Apply 🗶 Discard	BOSCH
Connection servers	Device data Device type assignment	-
TESTEN02B	+ 명 않 ×	
Access Engine	B B DMS AMC 4-R4 Inputs Outputs Terminals	
	⊟-Ba MAC → 🖾 AMC 4-R4-1-E	
	AMC 4-R4-Elm	
	Description: AMC 4-R4-1-Elmar	
	✓	
	Communication to host enabled: 🔽	
	Controller interface	
	Interface type: UDP _	
	PC com port: 0	
	Bus number: 11	
	Paddress / nost name:	
	Program: LCMV6018.RUN : I-BPR, AMC-4R4 -	
< >>	Power supply supervision:	
	No LAC accounting:	
Administration		
Cocations	Division: Common 🚽	
Infrastructure		
General settings		
Logging / Protocol		
Tools		

- Load the configuration in order to register the changes.
- Right click on the new added connections and select Add
- On the new window select Access Engine in order to add the ACE in the System.
- Then load the configuration again.

# Notice!



When trying to add the ACE in the new defined connection, a message "This is not the actual connection" may be generated.

In that case close the Configuration browsers. Load the Configuration usual. Then you can properly define the Access Engine Connection.

# Enabling the Access Engine Processes to work over Firewall

Complete the steps on adding process to Firewall using the Setting as below:

Control Panel\All Control Panel Items\Windows Firewa	all\Allowed apps	- <b>D</b> X
	V 🖒 Search Control Panel	Q
		2.5
Allow apps to communicate through Windows Firewall		
To add, change, or remove allowed apps and ports, click Change settings.		
What are the risks of allowing an app to communicate?	🚱 Cha <u>n</u> ge settings	
Allowed apps and features:		
Name	Private Public ^	
✓ 7-Zip File Manager		
ACE Card Personalization		
ACE Card Personalization Configuration		
✓ acsp.exe		
ACTA-3.exe		
I AEOPC.exe		
Amp.exe		
BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)		
BranchCache Hosted Cache Server (Uses HTTPS)  Respect Cache Hosted Cache Server (Uses HTTPS)		
BranchCache - Hosted Cache Server (Uses WSD)		
CalTa-3.exe		
	Details Remove	
	Allow another app	
	OK Cancel	

The firewall cannot be configured only by opening ports, because some ports are assigned dynamically.

Make the following settings instead:

- 1. Click Windows Start button > Settings > Control Panel > Windows-Firewall
- 2. Select tab **Exceptions**
- 3. Add the following programs, found in path [Install-path] \MgtS \ AccessEngine \AC \BIN
- ACSP.exe
- ACTA-3.exe
- AEOPC.exe
- CALTA-3.exe
- CDTA-1.exe
- GTM-2.exe
- Loggifier-2.exe
- Master-3.exe
- querySrv-2.exe
- REPS.exe
- TAccExc.exe

- SfmApp-4.exe (found in path [Install-path] \MgtS \AccessEngine \CP \BIN
- DMS.exe
- LAC.exe

found in path [Install-path]  $MgtS \land Ccess Engine \land MAC \land BIN$ 

# Communication between MAC and AMC:

- MAC connects to AMC via port 10001 (UDP)
- AMC connects to MAC (UDP configurable)

# **11.1.1 SQL Server for BIS database connections**

The following settings have to be done on the PC where the corresponding SQL Server is running.

# 1. Port settings (UDP):

For Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2: Start the Windows Firewall via "Start" - "Control Panel" - "Windows-Firewall" Select "Advanced settings", do the following for Inbound Rules Add new Rule Rule Type: Port (TCP)

For all Operating Systems:

- Allow UDP port 1434 for SQL Server Browser service

# 1. **Port settings (TCP):**

For Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2: Start the Windows Firewall via "Start" - "Control Panel" - "Windows-Firewall" Select "Advanced settings", do the following for Inbound Rules Add new Rule Rule Type: Port (TCP)

# For all Operating Systems:

- Allow TCP port 443 for SQL Server Browser service

# 1. **Program settings (Sqlservr.exe):**

For Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2: Start the Windows Firewall via "Start" - "Control Panel" - "Windows-Firewall" Select "Advanced settings", do the following for Inbound Rules Add new Rule Rule Type: Program Allow the following program:

# For all Operating Systems:

- C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10.(INSTANCE\_NAME)\MSSQL\Binn \sqlservr.exe

# (In case of a 64 Bit Operating System the path can be

C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft SQLServer\MSSQL10.(INSTANCE\_NAME)\MSSQL \Binn\sqlservr.exe)

# **11.1.2 SQL Server for BIS Reporting Services connections**

The following settings have to be done on the PC where the corresponding SQL Server is running.

Allow Port (TCP) for ReportingServices, by default 8080.

To find out the port which is used from the SQL Server for the BIS Reporting Services: Open "Reporting Services Configuration Manager" - Connect to the RS Instance you use with BIS - Open view for "Web Service URL" - the TCP Port number is available)

# 1. **Port settings (TCP):**

For Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2: Start the Windows Firewall via "Start" - "Control Panel" - "Windows-Firewall" Select "Advanced settings", do the following for Inbound Rules Add new Rule Rule Type: Port (TCP)

For all Operating Systems:

- Allow TCP port (e.g. 8080) for BIS Reporting Service connections

# **11.2** IPsec for a distributed system



# Notice!

Note, that using the IPSec will reduce the system performance.

To start the firewall open the **Control panel**:





#### - Select Advanced Settings

<b>@</b>	Wi	ndows Firewall w	vith Advance	ed Security		_ <b>□</b> X
File Action View Help						
(= =) 🖄 🖬 🖬 🖬						
Windows Firewall with Advan	Connection Security Rules					Actions
式 Inbound Rules	Name	Enabled	Endpoint 1	Endpoint 2	Authentication mode	Connection Security Rules
Outbound Rules	ace-test	Yes	172.18.0.46	172.18.0.221	Require inbound and	New Rule
Monitoring No	ew Rule					Filter by Profile
Fil	Iter by Profile 🕨					Filter by State
Fil	Iter by State 🕨					View
Vi	ew 🕨					Pofrach
Re	efresh					
Ex	port List					Export List
н	elp					Па нер
						1
<ul> <li>Right click o</li> </ul>	n Connection Secur	ity Rules	and sel	lect Nev	v Rule.	



#### Select Custom and click Next > to continue.

<b>@</b>	New Connection Security Rule Wizard	x
Requirements Specify the authentication require	ements for connections that match this rule.	
Steps: Aule Type Endpoints Authentication Method Protocol and Ports Profile Name	When do you want authentication to occur?         Gequest authentication for inbound and outbound connections Authenticate whenever possible but authentication is not required.         Require authentication for inbound connections and request authentication for outbound connections Inbound connections must be authenticated to be allowed. Outbound connections are authenticated whenever possible but authentication is not required.         Reguire authentication for inbound and outbound connections Both inbound and outbound connections must be authenticated to be allowed.         Do not authenticate No connections will be authenticated.         Leak       Next >	

 Select Require authentication for inbound and outbound connections and click Next > to continue:



- Select **Advanced** and click **Customize**.
- On the next screen click Add.
- On the next screen select **Preshared key** and type a password into the Input field.
- Click **OK** to confirm and click **Next >** to continue.

	New Connec	ion Security Rule Wiza	ard	×
Protocol and Ports				
Specify the protocol and ports to	which this rule applies.			
Steps:				
Rule Type	To which ports and prot	ocols does this rule apply?		
Endpoints	Protocol type:	Any	~	
Requirements	Protocol numb	er: 0 ^		
Authentication Method				
Protocol and Ports	Endpoint <u>1</u> por	All Ports	~	
Profile				
Name		Example: 80, 445, 5	000-5010	
	Endpoint 2 por	All Ports	×	
		Example: 80, 445, 5	000-5010	
			< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

	New Connection Security Rule Wizard	-
Profile		
Specify the profiles for which this	rule applies.	
Steps:		
Rule Type	When does this rule apply?	
Endpoints		
Requirements	✓ Domain	
Authentication Method	Applies when a computer is connected to its corporate domain.	
Protocol and Ports	✓ Private	
Profile	Applies when a computer is connected to a private network location, such as a home or work place.	
Name	✓ Public	
	Applies when a computer is connected to a public network location.	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

On the Profile screen activate Domain, Private, and Public and click Next > to continue.

Name   Speciry the name and description of this rule.     Staps: <ul> <li>Rule Type</li> <li>Endpoints</li> <li>Requirements</li> <li>Authentication Method</li> <li>Protocol and Pots</li> <li>Profie</li> <li>Description (optional):</li> <li>Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Pathon IPSec is configured.</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Back</li> <li>Entert</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Back</li> <li>Entert</li> <li>Entert</li> </ul>	<b>@</b>	New Connection Security Rule Wizard
Specify the name and description of this rule.          Steps: <ul> <li>Rule Type</li> <li>Endpoints</li> <li>Requirements</li> <li>Authentication Method</li> <li>Protocol and Ports</li> <li>Profile</li> <li>Description (optional):       <ul> <li>Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> <li>Entity BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> <li>Back Finish Cancel</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Name	
Steps: <ul> <li>Rule Type</li> <li>Endpoints</li> <li>Requirements</li> <li>Authentication Method</li> <li>Protocol and Pots</li> <li>Profile</li> <li>Description (optional):</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Name</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Name</li> <li>Cesting BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> </ul> <ul> <li>Name</li> <li>Cesting BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> </ul>	Specify the name and description of	this rule.
<ul> <li>Rule Type</li> <li>Endpoints</li> <li>Requirements</li> <li>Authentication Method</li> <li>Protocol and Ports</li> <li>Profile</li> <li>Name</li> <li>Description (optional):</li> <li>Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> </ul>	Steps:	
<ul> <li>Endpoints</li> <li>Requirements</li> <li>Authentication Method</li> <li>Protocol and Ports</li> <li>Profile</li> <li>Description (optional):</li> <li>Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.</li> </ul>	Rule Type	
• Requirements       Name:         • Authentication Method       Testing_BISACE         • Profile       Description (optional):         • Name       Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.	Endpoints	
Authentication Method     Testing_BISACE     Protocol and Ports     Description (optional):     Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.	Requirements	Name:
Profile     Description (optional):     Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.	Authentication Method	Testing_BISACE
Profile     Description (optional):     Testing BIS ACE when IPSec is configured.     (Seck Finish Cancel)	Protocol and Ports	
Name	Profile	Description (optional):
< Back Finish Cancel		
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u> Cancel

On the **Name** screen enter the name and a description for your Connection and click **Finish**.

2		Windows	Firewall v	with Advance	ed Security			
File Action View Help								
• 🔶 🙍 📰 🗟 🚺								
Windows Firewall with Advance	Connection Security Rule	s					Actions	
Cutbound Rules	Name  Testing_BISACE	D: 11 D 1	Enabled	Endpoint 1 Any	Endpoint 2 Any	Authentication mode Require inbound and	Connection Securit	y Rules
E Connection Security Rules Monitoring	ACE-TEST	Cut		172.18.0.46	172.18.0.221	Require inbound and	Filter by Profile	
		Сору					Filter by State	
		Delete					View	
		Properties					Export List	
	_						P Help	
							Testing_BISACE	
							Disable Rule	
							Cut	
							🗙 Delete	
							Properties	
							👔 Help	

\_

	Windo	ows Firewall with Advanc	ed Security			
ile Action View Help 🔿 👘 🗟 🗊						
Windows Firewall with Advance	Connection Security Rules				Actions	
<ul> <li>Inbound Rules</li> <li>Outbound Rules</li> <li>Connection Security Rules</li> <li>Monitoring</li> <li>Firewall</li> <li>Security Associations</li> </ul>	Name ACE-TEST Testing_BISACE	Enabled     Endpoint 1       Yes     172.18.0.46       No     Any         CE Properties         Remote Comouters       thentication     Advanced         is rule applies.         ito which this rule     Customize         neling should be     Customize	Endpoint 2 172.18.0.221 Any Connection turnel endp Note: Wher "Require int for gateway Use IPs Use IPs Local tu IPv4: IPv6: Remote IPv4: IPv6:	Authentication mode Require inbound and Require inbound and Require inbound and Customize IPsec Tu s from Endpoint 1 to Endpoin oints. Turnel endpoint are on IPsec tunneling is used, the bound and outbound" or "Re y devices). lec tunneling oby authorization smpt IPsec protected connect unnel endpoint (closest to En- Any Any et unnel endpoint (closest to En- Any Any et unnel endpoint (closest to En- Any Any	Connection Securi  Connection Securi  Connection Securi  Context and the security of the secure of the security of the securit	ty Rules  x cfied be set to bound" ancel
				>		

Right-click on the new rule under **Connecting Security Rules** and select **Properties**.

- On the **Testing BISACE Properties** dialog select the **Advanced** tab and click **Customize** under IPsec tunneling. Then click **OK** to confirm.
- On the next screen **Customize IPsec Tunneling Settings** activate Use **IPsec tunneling** and **Exempt IPsec protected connections**.
- Then click **OK** to confirm and finish the action.

In order to enable IPsec on other machines which are part of your test set up, you have to repeat the steps as described above on each one of these machines.

If the first machine is the BIS server, the other machines could be the BIS\_ACE client machine and the Connection server (OPC-machine).

# **12 Optimization of large installations**

# Introduction

This section describes the optimization of large installations of Access Engine (ACE) within the Building Integration System (BIS).

In a large ACE installation BIS handles the alarms and ACE handles the access control.

# Overview

The Access Engine consists of:

- Database Management System (DMS)
- Master Access Controllers (MAC)
- Access Modular Controllers (AMC) to which the card-readers are connected.

The following illustrates the hierarchy of ACE



# Master Access Controllers (MACs)

MAC servers are intended to provide redundancy at the level of a building. 1024 Authorizations are available per MAC server, and each MAC server can be in its own time zone. MAC servers can also be used for load balancing. The maximum number of MAC servers depends on the data volume. All messages from lower levels must be forwarded to the first level. The smaller the number of AMCs and card readers per MAC, the more MACs can be used.

For instance, 10 MACs with 100 AMCs each cause the same load on the DMS and BIS systems as 100 MACs with 10 AMCs each.

There is only ever one BIS with one DMS system. For this reason their hardware should be generously proportioned: for example multi-processor systems with fast storage, a minimum of 1 Gbit, preferably 2 Gbit network adapters, and sufficient memory.

MAC servers on the second level need not be so generously proportioned, but should take account of the number of AMCs and the amount of traffic at the card readers. Bosch recommends between 100 and 150 AMCs per MAC.

**Recommendation:** In general it is safer to have one MAC too many than one too few, and consequently system overloads and insufficient Authorizations.

# **12.1** Considerations for capacity planning

The following points should be considered when planning a large installation

# Number of card readers per AMC

Each AMC can serve 8 card readers, however the simultaneous use of all 8 leads to poor response times, because the AMC tries to send all requests to the same MAC concurrently. **Recommendation:** Do not connect all 8 readers to an entrance which is prone to peak traffic periods, e.g. a main entrance.

# Number of AMCs per MAC

Each MAC can serve up to 150 AMCs, which in turn can serve 8 connected card readers. Each time a card is read the AMC checks with the MAC whether the cardholder is authorized. This is especially time-consuming where anti-passback or access-sequence controls are in operation. **Recommendation**: At heavily frequented entrances connect fewer AMCs per MAC

Recommendation: Activate the setting DMS > MAC > AMC > Reader > tab: Door control > Open door if no answer from host

If the MAC fails to respond this setting will activate offline mode, and allow the AMC to make its own access decisions.

**Recommendation**: If using the simpler door models, set the parameter **Host request timeout** to **0**. This allows the AMC to make its own access decisions at all times.

# Overload of the DMS/1.MAC on the main server

It is a potential bottleneck if the 1.MAC resides with the DMS of the Access Engine and BIS on the same server computer.

Recommendation: The 1.MAC should serve fewer or less-busy AMCs.

**Recommendation**: Use full versions of SQL Server for BIS and ACE databases and locate these on separate computers with fast network connections.

Recommendation: Install BIS and ACE on separate server computers.

**Recommendation**: Besides network and CPU, disk I/O is crucial to the performance of ACE. Storage should be optimized for small, rapid bursts of I/O.

**Recommendation**: Deactivate debug-logging in the DMS and on every MAC (see separate documentation for the deactivation of log files).

**Recommendation**: Other CPU-hungry OPC servers should be located on their own Connection server computers.

# Effect of BIS downtimes

Alarms and messages from ACE are passed to BIS via an OPC server. If BIS goes offline the ACE messages are buffered for later re-synchronization with BIS. The longer the downtime, the more time-consuming is the re-synchronization when BIS returns.

In addition, when BIS restarts it runs all the Associations ("Triggers") for the messages accumulated in the last 5 minutes of downtime.

**Recommendation**: Reduce the number of minutes of accumulated messages. The default value of 5 is set in the following registry key:

*HKLM\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\Micos\SPS\DEFAULT\AEOPC\DeltaTOnline\@value=5* **Note**: If you change this parameter, messages and alarms that are older than the number of minutes in the parameter *@value* will no longer be processed.

#### Performance-relevant registry entries

The following registry entries can be used to reduce data traffic between BIS and ACE, and thus improve performance.

EnableAreas	Messages about the number of persons present in a designated <b>Area</b>
EnableDBChanges	Messages about each individual database change
EnableImportExport	Turns import/export messages on and off
EnableMsgCopy	Copies all parameters, including values, to an attribute
EnablePatrols	Turns messages about guard patrols on and off.

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\Micos\SPS\DEFAULT\AEOPC

**Recommendation:** Set the *@value* for the following entries to *0* (zero) and reboot: **EnableDBChanges** and **EnableMsgCopy** 

**Recommendtaion**: If no ACE Divisions are required, remove the line *OPCUSTOMER1* from the **GlobalParameters** database table.

#### Assignment of readers to Authorizations

When a reader is assigned to an Authorization the MAC re-sends all authorized cards to the AMC controllers,

**Recommendation**: Put as many card readers as possible into each ACE Authorization. This will make the assignment of multiple card readers to persons much more efficient.

**Recommendation**: if multiple readers are to be assigned to an Authorization, then assign them in a single batch (saving only once). Otherwise the authorized cards are transmitted to the AMCs after ever change.

**Recommendation**: if possible, create the Authorizations (along with their assigned readers) before assigning them to persons with cards.

# Using digital inputs and outputs (DIPs and DOPs)

Data traffic between MAC and DMS and BIS is increased considerably whenever BIS sends commands to or queries the status of digital inputs and outputs. A small mistake in the programming of DIPs and DOPs in BIS can severely hinder data traffic.

**Recommendation**: Use the DIPs and DOPs only for relatively rare alarms.

# Avoiding two thirds of all access messages

Besides the access message itself, each entry or exit at a reader creates the **Door open** and **Door closed** messages.

**Recommendation**: In the BIS Configuration Browser, deactivate the door open/closed messages under

DMS >MAC >AMC >Door >Events > Door state open\close

**Note:** Any messages from configured door sensors will still be processed, as will the message **Door open too long** 

#### **Mitigating MAC cold-starts**

During a MAC cold-start, the MAC receives its data updates automatically, but is not fully operational until the last record has arrived. This downtime can be considerable in the case of large data volumes (over 10,000 records).

Access sequence controls are only possible when the MAC is fully updated; therefore communication between the MAC and its AMCs is suspended during the update.

Recommendation: Activate the setting DMS > MAC > AMC > Reader > tab: Door control > Open door if no answer from host

During the time where the MAC is unable to respond, this setting will activate offline mode, and allow the AMC to make its own access decisions and admit known, authorized cards.

#### Avoiding cold start of the 1.MAC during BIS upgrades

Every BIS upgrade automatically triggers a cold start of the 1. MAC . For treatment of subsidiary MACs see the next section. Nevertheless the cold start of the 1.MAC can be avoided provided there have been no changes to the MAC software between the two BIS versions. This procedure may be worthwhile if large data volumes are involved, and their transfer would cause excessive downtime for the 1. MAC.

**Prerequisites**: Technical support has confirmed that there has been no change in the MAC software between the BIS versions.

1. Deactivate **all** MACs in BIS Configuration Browser:

Menu: Connections > Pane: Connection servers > AccessEngine > Pane: Device data > DMS > MAC

On the **MAC** tab, clear the check box labeled **Active Result:** The MAC icon appears overlaid with an **X** 

- Stop the MAC's Windows service: Windows Start > services.msc
   Stop and deactivate the service Access Engine (MAC)
- 3. Create a backup of the MAC database: Make a copy of the folder <installation drive>:\MgtS\Access Engine\MAC
- 4. Proceed with BIS Upgrade. Note that the upgrade process will still trigger the cold start, but the MACs will not respond, because they were deactivated at the start of this procedure.

**DO NOT** allow the upgrade process to reboot the system at this time, but first...

- 5. Verify that the MAC's windows service is still deactivated (see the procedure above)
- 6. Reboot the system
- 7. Copy the .DAT and .IDX files from the Db folder of the MAC backup (see above) into the now updated folder <installation drive>:\MgtS\Access Engine\MAC\Db\
- 8. In **services.msc**, set the **Access Engine (MAC)** service to **Automatic** and re-start the service.
- In the Configuration Browser, reactivate the 1. MAC: Menu: Connections > pane: Connection servers > AccessEngine > pane: Device data > DMS > MAC

On the **MAC** tab, select the check box labeled **Active Result:** The MAC icon appears without the **X** 

- 10. Reactivate the communication with each AMC individually. Note that the BIS upgrade procedure deactivates the AMCs, but does **not** reactivate them afterward. This gives the installer the opportunity to test the upgraded system thoroughly, piece by piece. In the Configuration Browser click menu: **Connections** > Pane: **Connection servers** > **AccessEngine** > Pane: **Device data** > **DMS** > MAC > AMC Select the check box **Communication to host enabled Result:** The AMC icon appears without an **X**
- 11. Thoroughly test the configuration by makings bookings at readers and sending commands to entrances.

# Testing a BIS-ACE upgrade

During a BIS-ACE software upgrade all AMC controllers are deactivated. This gives the installer an opportunity to test the update on individual controllers.

# **Recommendation**: Activate the setting **DMS** > MAC > AMC > Reader > **tab: Door control** > **Open door if no answer from host**

this setting (the default setting) will activate offline mode, and allow the AMC to make its own access decisions. It mitigates the bottleneck of only a small subset of MACs being online. **Recommendation**: After an update reactivate only 1 or 2 MACs, or 10-20 AMCs, at a time, and allow a few minutes between phases of reactivation.

# Avoiding or allowing cold starts on subsidiary MACs

During a BIS upgrade Subsidiary MAC servers should have their software updated before they resume communication with the newly upgraded DMS MAC system. In contrast to the BIS upgrade procedure on the 1. MAC server, the upgrade on subsidiary MAC servers always prompts as to whether a cold start is desired.

# Planning personnel imports carefully

If several thousand personnel records require modified Authorizations, updates or deletion then plan the import for a time of least impact to the users.

**Note:** It does not matter whether you are starting the import from a group dialog, or an application using the API in a background process.

# Assigning online and offline ("PegaSys") Authorizations

The ACE dialog **System Data** > **Authorizations** allows you to assign both normal online Authorizations and offline "PegaSys" Authorizations, on their respective tabs.

**Recommendation**: Allow the Authorizations time to spread through the system down to the controllers, even after the dialog itself shows the desired settings. To be certain, an installer can see in the UDP-log of the MAC whether records are waiting to be transmitted to the AMC. **Recommendation**: The process of assigning Authorizations can be shortened for individual cards by using an enrolment (read/write) card reader from the ACE dialog **Personnel Data** > **Cards** > tab: **PegaSys** > button: **Encode card** 

# Transmission of offline ("PegaSys") Authorizations

Unlike online Authorizations, offline ("PegaSys") Authorizations do not start to work when the first set of card data has been sent to the AMC controller. Offline Authorizations are not transmitted to the controllers until **all** sets of card-data, including online Authorizations, have been transmitted to the AMC controllers.

# 13Achieving EN 60839

# Introduction

EN 60839 is a family of European international standards for the hardware and software of:

- alarm and electronic security systems
- electronic access control systems

To ensure compliance of your access control system with this standard, parts of the configuration may need to be adapted. The following list contains the most important parts, for a complete list, please consult the standard as adopted in your own country.

# Special requirements for EN 60839 grades 3 and 4

- EN 60839 Grade 4 requires OSDP readers with encryption enabled. Without OSDP or without encryption the configuration can only achieve Grade 3.
- EN 60839 Grade 4 requires Active Directory (LDAP) or Windows accounts for all operators of the access control system, and enforced password strength, see the section *Rules for password strength , page 201* in this chapter.
- Access to the configuration mode must be strictly controlled. This can be achieved, for instance, by locating the computers in secured areas, and by timeouts on login sessions, particularly timeouts for inactivity at application and operating system level.
- Network and electric cabling must be laid in a secure area or encased in pipes.
- Only the card readers may be mounted in non-secured areas; all other devices must be in secured areas.
- The wiring of door contacts must not prevent the door's opening for an emergency evacuation triggered by a fire- or intrusion-prevention system.
- Any duress alarms must be made visible in the alarm-handling program (e.g. BIS).
- The minimum length of verification PINs for biometric or physical credentials must be set to at least 4.
- The minimum length of identification PINs must be set to at least 8.
- The main server computer, connection servers, MAC servers and clients must be synchronized with a network time server.
- Power monitoring must be enabled on local access controllers (e.g. AMCs).
- Offline functioning of local access controllers (e.g. AMCs) is only permitted during network failures. For example, the AMC's Host timeout parameter must not be set to 0.
- The alarm-handling program (e.g. BIS) must be configured to sort alarms by priority. The priority can be set from 1 (highest) to 99 (lowest).

# Rules for password strength

- The minimum password length must be set to at least 8.
- Note that this is longer than the length stipulated in the Microsoft security policy below.
  The Microsoft security policy setting: Passwords must meet complexity requirements
- must be enabled. Those requirements can be briefly summarized as follows:
- The password may not contain the user's account name or parts of the user's full name that exceed two consecutive characters. Both checks are not case sensitive.
- The password must contain characters from at least three of the following categories:
  - English uppercase characters (A through Z), characters with diacritic marks, Greek and Cyrillic characters
  - English lowercase letters (a through z, German sharp-s, characters with diacritic marks, Greek and Cyrillic characters
  - Base 10 digits (0 through 9)

Non-alphanumeric characters (special characters), for example, ! \$ # \$,
 Note however that currency symbols such as the Euro or British Pound are not counted as special characters for this policy setting

# 14 Configuring SmartIntego locking systems

# **Intended audience**

Persons responsible for the configuration of 3<sup>rd</sup> party locking systems within Bosch access control systems.

# Introduction

As of version 4.6 ACE supports the integration of the SmartIntego digital locking system from Simons Voss technologies. BIS ACE supports 1 SmartIntego configuration per MAC . SmartIntego applies two different methods of access control:

- Centralized: the SmartIntego locks are assigned via a Gateway access controller to a MAC.
  - All functions of the main access control system, such as location tracking, are maintained.
  - These functions are only available as long as the MAC is online.
  - **Decentralized**: A whitelist is stored locally on the SmartIntego doors.
    - When a door is online, card numbers can be individually assigned to and deleted from the whitelist by the main access control system.
       Assignments are made in the **Cards** dialog (**SmartIntego** tab) of the access control system client. See the Operation help for details.
    - When a door is offline, it will unlock for cards that are stored on its whitelist.

# Notice!

Logging of events while in offline mode

When a door comes back online, event logging is limited to whether or not the door was used at all while offline, **not** which card used it, when, and in which direction.

# The authorization process with SmartIntego

The SmartIntego card reader first tries to authorize access via the main access control (AC) system. If connection fails it searches its stored whitelist for the card number.

![](_page_203_Figure_2.jpeg)

# Prerequisites

- You have purchased the digital locking system and physically installed its hardware components at your site. These typically include, for online mode, SmartIntego Gateway access controllers, plus Locking cylinders or "SmartHandles".
   SmartIntego includes configuration tools that are not part of the Bosch access control software.
- Your cardholders are using MIFARE Classic or MIFARE Desfire cards.
   SmartIntego uses the Card Serial Number (CSN), and this variant must be assigned to the cardholders in the ACE client, **Cards** dialog.
- You have received from the installer one AES -key per MAC, containing exactly 16 characters (8-bit ASCII only).

**Note:** Ensure that this key and all passwords are kept safe. They are not recoverable if lost, and they are essential for extending or modifying the system.

You have received from the installer a configuration file in CSV format, containing the names and network addresses of the hardware components installed.
 Note: The names of doors and locks can be modified after importing the configuration. These names will not be overwritten by subsequent imports.

![](_page_203_Picture_9.jpeg)

#### Notice!

Do not edit the CSV file Corrupt or unusable configurations may result.

# Procedure

- 1. In the BIS Configuration Browser navigate to Connections > Connection servers > <your ACE connection server> > Access Engine
- 2. In the **Device data** column, select the MAC to which the GatewayNodes will be connected.
- 3. In the main window for the MAC, in the text field **AES-Key for SimonsVoss gateways** enter the AES key that you received from the installer.
- In the Device data column, right-click the MAC and select Import SimonsVoss configuration from the context menu.
   A file selection window appears.
- 5. Select the CSV file that you received from the installer and click the **Open** button. A popup window appears
- 6. In the popup window, select what you wish to import; either:
  - all the changes in the CSV file

or

- only modifications and additions (i.e. no deletions).
- 7. (Optional) Click the **Details** button if you wish to preview the changes in a popup window. Click **OK** in that popup window to close the preview.
- 8. Click OK
  - The changes appear in the Device data column under the selected MAC
- 9. Make any parameter changes you require (see next section).
- 10. Click the **Apply** button to save your changes.

# Parameters for customizing the SmartIntego configuration Introduction

The access control system provides SmartIntego-specific parameters for customizing the SmartIntego installation to your needs.

In the BIS Configuration Browser > **Connections** > tab: **Device data** tree select the Gateway , the entrance, the door or the reader, and set the following parameters, as required, in the main pane of the dialog:

# Parameters

Level in device data	Parameter	Values	Description
tree			
Gateway	Gateway	Combo-box, either	Gateway groups help to minimize radio
	group	empty or	frequency interference between
		containing integers	Gateways.
			Gateways within the same group are
			polled sequentially. Therefore, in case of
			interference, assign Gateways that are
			located close together to the <b>same</b> group.
			If the Combo-box is empty, or you require
			a new gateway group, type an integer to
			create a new gateway group named by
			that integer.
			Otherwise, assign the gateway to the
			group by selecting one of the list entries.

Level in device data tree	Parameter	Values	Description
Entrance	Waiting time external access decision	Integer. Tenths of a second.	The entrance will try for this length of time to get a decision from the access control system, before searching its own whitelist for the card number.
Door (Options tab)	Unlock door	Check box	This option is recommended only for the configuration phase, not for daily use. If this option is selected, a valid card will effectively put the door into office mode .
	Max lock activation time	Integer. Tenths of a second.	The duration of the signal that unlocks the door. This may need to be increased for disabled persons.
		•	
Reader (Additional settings tab)	Short-time activation	Check box	If selected, the reader uses a standby- mode, which makes it more responsive at the cost of increased power draw.
	Check readiness	Radio buttons: – 1x daily – Every <integer> minutes</integer>	This option determines how frequently the system checks the reader for readiness. High frequencies increase the power draw.

# 15

# Configuring intrusion areas and panels

# Introduction

The access control system supports the administration and operation of Bosch intrusion panels. Consult the datasheet of the access control system for details of the models that it supports. The access control system adds particular value in the administration of the intrusion panel **users**. These users are a subset of the cardholders of the overall access control system. Access control system administrators give these cardholders special authorizations to administer and operate the intrusion panels through the ACE Dialog Manager.

The intrusion panels themselves are configured and updated as previously through their Remote Programming Software (RPS). ACE continually reads from the RPS database, and displays the panels that are in it.

ACE contains dialogs to create panel users and their authorization profiles, and to manage the panels.

# Prerequisites

- The RPS of supported Bosch intrusion panels is installed on a separate computer in the ACE system, **not** on the ACE server. Consult the RPS installation guide for installation instructions.
- RPS has been configured with the intrusion panels that will belong to the ACE access control system. Consult the RPS user guide or online help for instructions.
- The clocks on the panels are within 100 days of the clock on the ACE server, to enable automatic synchronization.
- Mode 2 protocol is set on all participating panels.
- Cards with one of the following standard card definitions:
  - HID 37 BIT -> Intrusion 37 BIT with a facility/site code of 32767 or lower.
  - HID 26 BIT- > Intrusion 26 BIT
  - EM 26 BIT- > Intrusion 26 BIT

# Overview

The configuration process consists of the following stages, described in the following sections in this chapter:

- 1. Connecting the access control system to the intrusion panels.
  - Connecting to the RPS API.
  - Configuring the panel connections.
- 2. Creating panel authorization profiles that govern which functions of the connected panels can be used.
- 3. Assigning panel authorization profiles to cardholders.
  - These cardholders thus become operators for the intrusion panels.

# **15.1 Connecting the access control system to the intrusion panels**

# Introduction

This section describes how to view the intrusion panels and make them available for control through ACE client. The access control system connects to one RPS on its network, and through it maintains an up-to-date internal list of the compatible intrusion panels that are available.

# Dialog path

Main menu > Configuration > Panels and subdialogs

# 15.1.1 Step 1: Connecting to the RPS API

The RPS API is an interface to the RPS, which is running on a separate computer. Step 1 is to provide the computer's address and administrator login information to the access control system.

# **Dialog path**

## Main menu > Configuration > Panels > RPS API configuration

#### Procedure

1. Enter the following information:

Information	Description
Host name / IP address	The HTTPS address of the computer on which the RPS is running, and the port number through which the RPS communicates. The default port number is <i>9000</i> .
User name	The user name of an RPS administrator user for the API.
Password	The password of the RPS administrator user.

2. Click the button **Test the connection** to ensure that the RPS is running, and that the user name and password are valid

# **15.1.2** Step 2: Configuring the panel connections

Step 2 is to define the amount of control that the access control system has over individual panels on the network.

# **Dialog path**

# Main menu > Configuration > Panels > Panel administration

The dialog maintains a list of the compatible intrusion panels that the RPS API has provided to the ACE.

The list is periodically updated in the background. After you open the dialog, click  $\mathcal{O}$  occasionally, to force an immediate update manually.

The list is read-only, except for the controls described in the following section.

# Procedure

Use the controls below to allow control of individual intrusion panels by the access control system.

List column <b>User administration</b>	Select the check box to ensure that the users of the intrusion panel in this row are maintained in the access control system and <b>not</b> on the panel itself. <b>IMPORTANT</b> : this setting causes all panel users that were created locally in RPS to be overwritten.
List column <b>Map View</b>	Select the check box to make this panel available for Command and Control through the ACE client .

Settings (cog) icon in the <b>Access data</b> column.	If you selected the check box in the <b>Map View</b> column, click the icon to enter a host name or IP address, a port and the passcode for the individual panel.	
Button:	If a panel has been deleted in RPS it appears with a status of	
Delete selected panel	<b>Removed</b> in the list. Select the panel and click this button to	
	delete it completely from the database.	

# 15.2

# Creating authorization profiles for panels

# Introduction

This section describes how to create panel authorization profiles.

A panel authorization profile is a custom set of authorizations to operate a custom set of intrusion panels. An ACEadministrator can create multiple panel authorization profiles for the various responsibilities of various groups of cardholders.

# Dialog path

# Main menu > System data > Authorization profiles for intrusion panels

# Procedure

- 1. Click  $\square \oplus$  to create a new profile
- 2. (Mandatory) Enter a name for the profile
- 3. (Optional) Enter a free-text description for the panel
- 4. Below the **Assigned panels** list, click **Add...** to add one or more panels from a popup list of panels available on the network.

Conversely, select one or more panels and click **Remove** to remove them from the list.

- 5. Click a panel in the **Assigned panels** list to select it.
  - In the **Authorizations** pane, a list appears containing all the intrusion areas that belong to the selected panel.
- 6. In the **Authorizations** list, in the column **Authority level**, select an authority level for each intrusion area of the panel that is to be included in this profile.
  - The authority levels are defined and maintained in RPS. They may be customized there also. Make sure you know the definition of the authority level in RPS before assigning it to a profile.
  - By default L1 is the highest authority level, with L2, L3 etc. increasingly restricted.
  - If you leave a cell blank, then the recipient of this profile will have **no** authorization over the selected intrusion area of the selected panel.
- 7. Repeat this process for all the intrusion areas of all the panels to be included in this profile.
- 8. (Optional) From the **User group** list, select a panel user group in order to restrict the authorizations to certain time periods.
  - The user groups are defined and maintained in RPS. They may be customized there also. Make sure you know the definition of the user group in RPS before assigning the user group to a profile.

# 15.3 Assigning panel authorization profiles to cardholders

# Introduction

This section describes how to assign different panel authorization profiles to different types or groups of cardholders.

# Prerequisite

You have defined one or more panel authorization profiles in the access control system.

# **Dialog path**

Main menu > Persons > Cards

# Procedure

- 1. In the usual way, find and select the desired cardholder from the database.
- 2. Click the **Intrusion** tab.
- 3. On the Intrusion tab, select the check box Panel user.
- 4. (Mandatory) In the **Passcode** field, type a passcode through which this cardholder will operate the intrusion panels.
  - If required, use the button to generate an unused new passcode.
- 5. In the **ID card** list, select one of the access control credentials that is assigned to this cardholder.
- 6. (Optional) In the **Number of remote** field, enter the number that is printed on the cardholder's remote control device for intrusion panels.
- 7. In the **Language** list, select the language in which the cardholder prefers to read panel dialogs.
- 8. If the cardholder is to use the Bosch smartphone application for intrusion panels, select the **Remote access** check box.
- 9. From the **Authorization profile** list, select a suitable panel authorization profile for the cardholder.
  - This panel authorization profile, with all its panels and authorizations, is assigned to the cardholder. The cardholder thus becomes an operator for the intrusion panels.

Note that you can also use the data fields on this dialog with the  $\sim$  button to find cardholders in the database.

# Glossary

# 1.MAC (first MAC)

The primary MAC (Master Access Controller) in a BIS Access Engine (ACE) or Access Manager (AMS) system. It can reside on the same computer as the DMS, but it can also reside, like a subsidiary MAC, on a separate computer known as a MAC server.

# **Access Sequence Monitoring**

The tracking of a person or vehicle from one defined Area to another by recording each scan of the ID card, and granting access only from Areas where the card has already been scanned.

# ACE large installation

A large installation in BIS Access Enhgine (ACE) is defined as one having more than 10,000 active cards, or more than 150 AMC controllers

# AES

The Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is a worldwide standard specification for the encryption of electronic data

#### anti-passback

A simple form of Acces Sequence Monitoring in which a cardholder is prevented from entering an Area twiice within a defined time period, unless the card has been scanned to exit that Area in the meantime. Anti-passback deters a person from passing credentials back through an entrance for use by an unauthorized second person.

# Area (Arming)

A grouping of entrances of entrance model 14 in an access control system. The arming or disarming of the intrusion system at one of these entrances simultaneously has the same effect at all entrances where the parameter Arming area has the same one-letter designation.

# Assembly point

a designated place where people are instructed to wait after evacuating a building.

# Automated number-plate recognition (ANPR)

The use of video technology to read and process number plates, typically of road vehicles.

# **Data Management System (DMS)**

A top-level process for managing access control data in the system. The DMS supplies data to main access controllers (MAC), which in turn supply data to local access controllers (usually AMC).

## **Destination Dispatching System (DDS)**

also known as Destination Management System, but use only abbreviation DDS. Otis CompassPlus is a kind of DDS.

# **Destination Entry Server (DES)**

A computer that governs an elevator bank to optimize travel times.

# **Destination Entry Terminal (DET)**

A device where elevator passengers can enter destination requests for an elevator group.

# **Configuration mode**

the default state of access control devices in the device editor. Changes take effect and propagate to subordinate devices immediately.

# **Operation mode**

the state of an access control device in the device editor while it is responding to commands given outside the device editor. Configuration changes take effect only after operation mode ends and configuration mode is restored.

# **DMS server**

Hardware: A computer that hosts the Data Management System (DMS) of the access control system.

# Door model

A stored software template of a particular type of entrance. Door models facilitate the definition of entrances in access control systems.

# elevator group

A group of elevators serving the same floors in concert. Each elevator group is governed by a Destination Entry Server (DES).

#### Entrance

The term Entrance denotes in its entirety the access control mechanism at an entry point: It includes the readers, some form of lockable

barrier and an access procedure as defined by sequences of electronic signals passed between the hardware elements.

# Gateway (SmartIntego)

An access controller device that controls SmartIntego card readers via radio signals.

#### IDS

Intruder detection system, also known as a burglar alarm system.

# MAC (Main Access Controller)

In access control systems a server program that coordinates and controls the Local Access Controllers, usually AMCs (Access Modular Controller)

#### Normal mode

In contrast to office mode, normal mode grants access only to persons who present valid credentials at the reader.

# Office mode

The suspension of access control at an entrance during office or business hours.

#### Identification PIN

A Personal Identification Number (PIN) that is the sole credential required for access.

#### **Verification PIN**

A Personal Identification Number (PIN) used in combination with a phyisical credential to enforce greater security.

# Point

A sensor to detect intrusion into an intrusioncontrolled area. In some contexts points may be called zones or sensors.

# RMAC

A redundant main access controller (MAC) that is a synchronized twin of an existing MAC, and takes over management of its data if the first MAC fails or gets disconnected.

#### RPS

Remote Programming Software. A program that manages fire or intrusion control panels on a network.

#### MAC server

Hardware: A computer (other than the DMS server) in an Access Engine (ACE) or Access Management (AMS) System, where a MAC or an RMAC runs.

#### SmartIntego

A digital locking system from Simons Voss technologies. SmartIntego is integrated with some Bosch access control systems.

#### tailgating

Circumventing acces control by closely following an authorized cardholder through an entrance without presenting one's own credentials.

# Whitelist (SmartIntego)

A whitelist is a list of card numbers that is stored locally on the card readers of a SmartIntego locking system. If the reader's MAC is offline, the reader grants access for cards whose numbers are contained in its local whitelist.

Bosch Security Systems B.V. Torenallee 49 5617 BA Eindhoven Netherlands www.boschsecurity.com © Bosch Security Systems B.V., 2021